

St. Dev.	0.0097	0.0095	0.8884	9.0649
% RSD	7.14	6.76	8.34	8.34

Table 5-10: Solution 02 25°C/60% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.12280	0.12611	8.88043	90.62
2	0.13318	0.13549	9.55581	97.51
3	0.13260	0.13452	9.71837	99.17
4	0.12064	0.12305	9.48123	96.75
5	0.13215	0.13582	9.34463	95.35
6	0.13559	0.13790	9.48722	96.81
7	0.13158	0.13371	9.43613	96.29
8	0.13357	0.13495	9.79164	99.91
9	0.12165	0.12443	8.84732	90.28
Average	0.12931	0.13178	9.394	95.85
St. Dev.	0.0058	0.0056	0.3303	3.3701
% RSD	4.52	4.25	3.52	3.52

Table 5-11: Solution 02 40°C/75% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.12336	0.12563	9.02005	92.04
2	0.05723	0.05792	9.43076	96.23
3	0.13554	0.13908	9.93829	101.41
4	0.13619	0.13679	9.87755	100.79
5	0.13227	0.13414	9.64403	98.41
6	0.13331	0.13515	9.80808	100.08
7	0.13455	0.13844	9.31952	95.10
8	0.13314	0.13736	9.28106	94.70
9	0.13249	0.13387	9.32935	95.20
Average	0.12423	0.12649	9.517	97.11

St. Dev.	0.0254	0.0260	0.3148	3.2119
% RSD	20.45	20.57	3.31	3.31

Table 5-12: Suspension 01 25°C/60% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.12873	0.12999	12.85366	91.81
2	0.14011	0.14247	13.68122	97.72
3	0.14515	0.14757	14.09449	100.67
4	0.13205	0.13347	14.18775	101.34
5	0.14554	0.14743	14.48202	103.44
6	0.14473	0.14682	14.39897	102.85
7	0.13229	0.13411	14.87853	106.28
8	0.14357	0.14581	14.82712	105.91
9	0.14741	0.14940	14.86732	106.20
Average	0.13995	0.14190	14.252	101.80
St. Dev.	0.0070	0.0074	0.6602	4.7154
% RSD	5.03	5.18	4.63	4.63

Table 5-13: Suspension 01 40°C/75% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.14411	0.14869	13.04770	93.20
2	0.14066	0.14151	13.23277	94.52
3	0.13012	0.13485	13.78126	98.44
4	0.14667	0.14879	13.36970	95.50
5	0.14294	0.14338	12.54309	89.59
6	0.13797	0.14253	13.25396	94.67
7	0.13374	0.13594	13.41984	95.86
8	0.12388	0.12559	14.34944	102.50
9	0.13790	0.14011	13.88564	99.18
Average	0.13755	0.14015	13.431	95.94

(markup)

St. Dev.	0.0073	0.0073	0.5223	3.7310
% RSD	5.28	5.19	3.89	3.89

Table 5-14: Suspension 03 25°C/60% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Disazepam Recovered
1	0.13604	0.13897	25.93418	92.62
2	0.14608	0.14792	26.21721	93.63
3	0.15294	0.15425	30.05570	107.34
4	0.14728	0.14910	25.78804	92.10
5	0.15352	0.15493	26.60721	95.03
6	0.15242	0.15401	29.51030	105.39
7	0.15118	0.15254	28.43104	101.54
8	0.15322	0.15556	28.03664	100.13
9	0.15197	0.15393	26.82906	95.82
Average	0.14941	0.15125	27.490	98.18
St. Dev.	0.0057	0.0053	1.5812	5.6472
% RSD	3.79	3.50	5.75	5.75

Table 5-15: Suspension 03 40°C/75% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Disazepam Recovered
1	0.13574	0.13797	28.14588	100.52
2	0.13639	0.13803	27.04437	96.59
3	0.14082	0.14195	26.78985	95.68
4	0.12962	0.13249	29.07192	103.83
5	0.12518	0.12683	27.39785	97.85
6	0.14423	0.14541	28.50133	101.79
7	0.13922	0.14096	27.34617	97.66
8	0.14146	0.14313	27.17415	97.05
9	0.14902	0.15344	27.20939	97.18
Average	0.13796	0.14002	27.631	98.68

(markup)

St. Dev.	0.0073	0.0076	0.7642	2.7294
% RSD	5.28	5.43	2.77	2.77

#### Example 6

~~{0221}~~{0214} All of the solutions and suspensions described in Examples 3 and 4 are and formulated as described in Examples 3 and 4, with the addition of a suitable amount of an alkyl glycoside, as described herein, such as dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or combinations of two or more thereof, or marketed as Intravail<sup>®</sup> by Aegis Therapeutics, San Diego, CA. The solutions and suspensions with added alkyl glycoside may then be put up on stability as described in Example 5, *mutatis mutandis*.

#### Example 7

~~{0222}~~{0215} The solutions and suspensions of Examples 3, 4 and 6 are evaluated for pharmacokinetics in a suitable animal model, such as in mice, rats, rabbits or dogs. First each animal (e.g. rabbit) is administered an amount of a benzodiazepine drug intravenously. The amount of intravenously dosed benzodiazepine drug is selected to be less, e.g. roughly half, of what is considered an effective dose administered nasally. For example, the intravenous dose of diazepam administered to rabbits is about 0.05 to about 0.2 mg/kg, e.g. about 0.1 mg/kg. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at specific time points post-administration. Plasma blood levels of the drug are assayed for each of the blood samples. After at least a one day washout period, each animal is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution or suspension as described in Examples 3, 4 and 6. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at substantially the same specific time points as the IV dose post-administration. Pharmacokinetic curves (blood plasma concentration of drug versus time) are constructed for the intravenous route of administration and for each of the solutions and suspensions administered by the intranasal administration route.

~~{0223}~~{0216} Toxicity is assessed by known means. In particular, histological samples are collected from the nasal mucosal tissues of the test animals. Other toxicological methods are optionally employed as well.

#### Example 8

~~{0224}~~{0217} The solutions and suspensions of Examples 3, 4 and 6 are evaluated for their ability to deliver drug across the blood brain barrier in a suitable animal model, such as in mice, rats, rabbits or dogs. Each animal is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution or suspension as described in Examples 3, 4 and 6, with the solution or suspension optionally containing an imaging agent, such as a dye, that may be used as a proxy for determining the ability of the drug to cross the blood brain barrier. The drug or imaging agent is detected at selected time points after administration of the suspension or solution to determine how well the drug or imaging agent crosses the blood brain barrier. These results may be compared with analogous result obtained with an intravenous solution containing the drug or imaging agent.

(markup)

### Example 9

~~{0225}~~{0218} The above-described solutions and/or suspensions can be evaluated for pharmacokinetics in humans. Normal, healthy human test subjects are administered an amount of the drug intravenously. The amount chosen for intravenous administration may be any amount, but is conveniently a dose that is considered effective in treating seizure in humans. For example, an IV dose of diazepam administered to humans may be in the range of 1 to 15 mg, e.g. about 7.5 mg. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at selected time points after administration. Plasma blood levels of the drug are assayed for each of the blood samples. After at least a one day washout period, each subject is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution or suspension as described herein. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at substantially the same time points after administration as the intravenous time points. Pharmacokinetic curves (blood plasma concentration of drug versus time) are constructed for the intravenous and intranasal administration routes.

### Example 10

~~{0226}~~{0219} The above-described solutions and/or suspensions can be evaluated for efficacy in a suitable animal model. Briefly, for each dose of suspension or solution to be tested, a test animal is stimulated with a seizure inducing stimulus. The stimulus may be light, sound, chemical or other stimulus effective to induce seizure in the model animal. Once the animal has begun to seize, a solution or suspension as described herein is administered intranasally to the animal. The efficacy of the dose of the solution and/or suspension is evaluated based upon the animal's response to the test dose. This procedure is repeated through sufficient iterations, and at sufficient numbers of doses, to identify a dose that is considered effective to treat seizure by intranasal administration of the drug.

### Example 11

~~{0227}~~{0220} A pharmaceutical composition comprising diazepam was prepared as a composition formulated as a solution to be delivered via a nasal delivery device. The solution was prepared according to the procedure outlined in the flow diagram of Figure 4. The ingredients used in the 100 mg/mL diazepam solution are set forth in Table 11-1, below:

Table 11-1

---

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Concentration (% (w/v))</u>
Diazepam	10.00 % (w/v)
$\alpha$ -tocopherol*	56.47 % (w/v)
Ethanol (dehydrated)	q.s. ((~18.07) % (w/v))
Intravail A3**	0.25 % (w/v)
Benzyl alcohol	10.50 % (w/v)

---

\*Vitamin E, \*\*Dodecyl maltoside

(markup)

~~{0228}~~{0221} A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 25°C/60% R.H. for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 3 month, 6 month and 12 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	99.5	99.2	99.1

~~{0229}~~{0222} A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 30°C/65% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 1 month and 12 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	97.8	99.7

~~{0230}~~{0223} A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 40°C/75% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 3 month, 6 month and 12 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	97.9	100.0	99.4

~~{0231}~~{0224} The suspension formulation is set forth in Table 11-2 (not claimed), below

(markup)

<b>Component</b>	<b>Function</b>	<b>Concentration (mg/mL)</b>
Diazepam	Active	100.0
Methyl Paraben	Preservative	2.0
Propyl Paraben	Preservative	0.5
Intravail A3	Absorption aid	2.5
Vitamin E TPGS	Dispersant	10.0
Propylene Glycol	Dispersant	100.0
Povidone	Suspending agent	5.0
Water	Carrier	q.s. to 1.0 mL

{0232}{0225} A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 25°C/60% R.H. for 3 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial and 3 month time points.

<b>Test Parameter</b>	<b>Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)</b>	<b>3 Month</b>
<b>Appearance</b>	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid
<b>Diazepam % Label Claim</b>	104.4	102.1

{0233}{0226} A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 30°C/65% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 1 month. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial and 1 month time points.

<b>Test Parameter</b>	<b>Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)</b>	<b>1 Month</b>
<b>Appearance</b>	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid
<b>Diazepam % Label Claim</b>	104.4	102.9

{0234}{0227} A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 40°C/75% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 3 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 1 month and 3 month time points.

<b>Test Parameter</b>	<b>Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)</b>	<b>1 Month</b>	<b>3 Month</b>
<b>Appearance</b>	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid	White liquid
<b>Diazepam % Label Claim</b>	104.4	102.7	108.7

{0235}{0228} A three-period, three-treatment, six-sequence, randomized cross-over study was conducted in healthy volunteers. For each dose, each volunteer was domiciled for at least 12 hours prior to each dose and until after a 24 hour pharmacokinetic sample was collected. Single doses of 100 µL of the pharmaceutical compositions described in Tables 11-1 and 11-2 were administered to each volunteer as one spray to the left nostril of 100 µL per spray. Pharmacokinetic samples were collected at 22 time points over 10 days. (PK time points: 2.5, 5, 10, 15, 20, 30 and 45 minutes, 1, 1.5, 2, 4, 12, 24, 36, 48, 72, 96, 144, 192 and 240 hours after

(markup)

each dose.) No serious adverse events were noted. PK data were compared with those obtained with 5 mg of diazepam administered intravenously. The PK data are summarized in Table 11-3 and Figures 1-3.

~~0236~~0229 The solution of Table 11-1 and the suspension of Table 11-2 were found to be well-tolerated with only mild adverse events reported. The solution of Table 11-1 was further found to have similar bioavailability to intravenous administration of diazepam (96% of i.v.) The intranasal formulation of Table 11-1 exhibited a T<sub>max</sub> of 1.5 hours, a C<sub>max</sub> of approximately 272 ng/mL. These results are comparable to those reported in the literature for commercially available diazepam gel (Diastat®).

~~0237~~0230 Solutions similar to those set forth in Table 11-1 can be prepared consisting of: diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)); diazepam (9-11 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.1-0.5 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (15-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)); or diazepam (10 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.15-0.3 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (17-20 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (10-12 % (w/v)).

~~0238~~0231 Solutions similar to those set forth in Table 11-1 achieve bioavailability that is from about 80-125% of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously, e.g. bioavailability that is from about 90-110% of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously or about 92.5 to 107.5% that obtained with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously. Such solutions may be used in methods of treating a patient with a disorder which may be treatable with a benzodiazepine drug, such as seizure, epileptic seizure and/or breakthrough seizure. In some embodiments, solutions described herein may be used to treat a disorder such as is treated with Diastat® diazepam gel.

~~0239~~0232 A summary of pharmacokinetic data obtained for the solution and a suspension form of diazepam is shown below in Table 11-3:

**Table 11-3**

**Summary of Pharmacokinetic Parameters for Intranasal (10 mg) and IV (5 mg) Diazepam**

Parameter <sup>a</sup>	Diazepam Nasal Spray (10 mg/100µL)				Diazepam Injection	
	NRL-1.A Suspension		NRL-1.B Solution		5 mg/mL IV	
	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>
C <sub>max</sub> (ng/mL)	24	221 (78.6)	24	272 (100)	24	555 (316)
T <sub>max</sub> (h) <sup>b</sup>	24	1.00 (0.6, 2.0)	24	1.50 (0.8, 4.0)	24	0.03 (0.03, 0.50)
AUC <sub>0-t</sub> (h×ng/mL)	24	5229 (1463)	24	7340 (1882)	24	3832 (1150)
AUC <sub>0-∞</sub> (h×ng/mL)	20	5381 (1409)	20	7338 (2072)	24	4104 (1318)
λ <sub>Z</sub> (h <sup>-1</sup> )	20	0.0142 (0.0053)	20	0.0155 (0.0046)	24	0.0142 (0.0055)
t <sub>1/2</sub> (h)	20	56.2 (23.0)	20	49.2 (16.9)	24	56.2 (21.0)

a: Mean values are presented as arithmetic means.

b: Median (min, max) reported for T<sub>max</sub>.

(markup)



~~{0240}~~~~{0233}~~ The data collected in the study are further illustrated in Figures 1-3. Figure 1 is a linear scale plot of the arithmetic mean of the plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal (IN) administration of 10 mg of diazepam as the suspension of Table 11-2 and after IN administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1 compared to intravenous (IV) administration of 5 mg of diazepam. Figure 2 is a semi-logarithmic scale plot of the same data shown in Figure 1. Figure 3 shows the first 24 hours of data from Figure 1 on a linear scale.

~~{0241}~~ While preferred embodiments of the present invention have been shown and described herein, it will be obvious to those skilled in the art that such embodiments are provided by way of example only. Numerous variations, changes, and substitutions will now occur to those skilled in the art without departing from the invention. It should be understood that various alternatives to the embodiments of the invention described herein may be employed in practicing the invention. It is intended that the following claims define the scope of the invention and that methods and structures within the scope of these claims and their equivalents be covered thereby.

## Auxiliary Request 2

### Claims

1. A pharmaceutical solution for use in a method of treating seizures by nasal administration of said pharmaceutical solution which consists of:

5 (a) a benzodiazepine drug;

(b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w);

10 (c) ~~1-25~~10-22.5% (w/v) ethanol and ~~1-25~~7.5 to 12.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount from 10% to 50% (w/w); and

(d) an alkyl glycoside.

2. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof.

3. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 2, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of benzodiazepine.

20 4. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 3, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of diazepam.

5. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocopherolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof.

~~6. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, containing 10-22.5% (w/v) ethanol and 7.5-12.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.~~

30 ~~7~~6. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w).

~~8. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 0.01-1% (w/v) alkyl glycoside, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol and 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.~~

35 ~~9~~7. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises at least 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside.

~~108.~~ The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim ~~107~~, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of dodecyl maltoside.

5 ~~119.~~ The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of diazepam, vitamin E, ethanol, benzyl alcohol, and dodecyl maltoside.

~~12. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol, 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.01%-1% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.~~

10 ~~13. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 10% (w/v) diazepam, 56.47% (w/v) vitamin E, q.s. dehydrated ethanol, 10.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.25% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.~~

Main Request

Claims

1. A pharmaceutical solution for use in a method of treating seizures by nasal administration of said pharmaceutical solution which consists of:

5 (a) a benzodiazepine drug;

(b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w);

(c) 1-25% (w/v) ethanol and 1-25% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount from 10% to 50% (w/w); and

10 (d) an alkyl glycoside; and

(e) optionally at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient.

2. ~~The use of the pharmaceutical solution of~~ for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures, wherein the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof.

Former Claim 3: deleted:

3. ~~The use of the pharmaceutical solution of~~ for use according to claim 1 ~~in treating seizures,~~ containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of benzodiazepine.

4. ~~The use of the pharmaceutical solution of~~ for use according to claim 4 ~~in treating seizures,~~ containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of diazepam.

5. ~~The use of the pharmaceutical solution of~~ for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocopherols, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof.

6. ~~The use of the pharmaceutical solution of~~ for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures, containing 10-22.5% (w/v) ethanol and 7.5-12.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.

7. ~~The use of the pharmaceutical solution of~~ for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w).

8. ~~The use of the pharmaceutical solution of~~ for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 0.01-1% (w/v) alkyl glycoside, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol and 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.

9. The ~~use of the~~ pharmaceutical solution ~~of for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures,~~ wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises at least 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside.

5 10. The ~~use of the~~ pharmaceutical solution ~~of for use according to claim 910 in treating seizures,~~ wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of dodecyl maltoside.

11. The ~~use of the~~ pharmaceutical solution ~~of for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures,~~ consisting of diazepam, vitamin E, ethanol, benzyl alcohol, and dodecyl maltoside.

10 12. The ~~use of the~~ pharmaceutical solution ~~of for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures,~~ consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol, 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.01%-1% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.

15 13. The ~~use of the~~ pharmaceutical solution ~~of for use according to claim 1 in treating seizures,~~ consisting of 10% (w/v) diazepam, 56.47% (w/v) vitamin E, q.s. dehydrated ethanol, 10.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.25% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.

Auxiliary Request 1  
Claims

1. A pharmaceutical solution for use in a method of treating seizures by nasal administration of said pharmaceutical solution which consists of:

5 (a) a benzodiazepine drug;

(b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w);

(c) 1-25% (w/v) ethanol and 1-25% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount from 10% to 50% (w/w); and

10 (d) an alkyl glycoside

~~, and (e) ...~~

2. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprozepam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof.

3. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 2, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of benzodiazepine.

20 4. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 3, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of diazepam.

5. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof.

6. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, containing 10-22.5% (w/v) ethanol and 7.5-12.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.

7. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w).

8. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 0.01-1% (w/v) alkyl glycoside, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol and 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.

35 9. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises at least 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside.

10. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 9, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of dodecyl maltoside.

11. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of diazepam, vitamin E, ethanol, benzyl alcohol, and dodecyl maltoside.

5 12. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol, 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.01%-1% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.

10 13. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 10% (w/v) diazepam, 56.47% (w/v) vitamin E, q.s. dehydrated ethanol, 10.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.25% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.

## Acknowledgement of receipt

We hereby acknowledge receipt of the following subsequently filed document(s):

Submission number	5752715	
Application number	EP12801372.9	
Date of receipt	02 November 2017	
Receiving Office	European Patent Office, The Hague	
Your reference	EPA-124 519	
Applicant	All applicants as on file	
Documents submitted	package-data.xml  epf1038.pdf (1 p.)  DESC-HWA-1.pdf\EPA-124519_specification (markup).pdf (67 p.)  CLMS-HWA-1.pdf\EPA-124519_claims MR (markup).pdf (2 p.)  CLMS-HWA-2.pdf\EPA-124519_claims AR1(markup).pdf (2 p.)  CLMS-HWA-3.pdf\EPA-124519_claims AR2(markup).pdf (2 p.)	ep-sfd-request.xml  DESC-1.pdf\EPA-124519_specification (clean).pdf (55 p.)  CLMS-1.pdf\EPA-124519_claims MR (clean).pdf (2 p.)  CLMS-2.pdf\EPA-124519_claims AR1(clean).pdf (2 p.)  CLMS-3.pdf\EPA-124519_claims AR2 (clean).pdf (1 p.)  ORAL-1.pdf\EPA-124519_response.pdf (9 p.)
Submitted by	CN=Petra Baudrexel 24738	
Method of submission	Online	
Date and time receipt generated	02 November 2017, 14:53 (CET)	
Message Digest	37:35:AB:DC:2B:2B:65:DB:70:49:ED:2A:E7:F5:B2:6B:64:8D:5F:16	



**Correction by the EPO of errors in debit instructions filed by eOLF**

Errors in debit instructions filed by eOLF that are caused by the editing of Form 1038E entries or the continued use of outdated software (all forms) may be corrected automatically by the EPO, leaving the payment date unchanged (see decision T 152/82, OJ EPO 1984, 301 and point 6.3 ff ADA, Supplement to OJ EPO 10/2007).

*/European Patent Office/*

Application No. :

12 801 372.9

**Consultation by telephone with the applicant / representative**

Despatch for information

**Participants**

Applicant: Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

Representative: Sonnenhauser, Thomas

Member(s) of the  
Examining Division: Gómez Gallardo, S

**Result of consultation**

See Separate Sheet



06.11.2017

.....  
Date

Gómez Gallardo, S

.....  
Examiner

Enclosure(s):



European Patent Office  
Postbus 5818  
2280 HV Rijswijk  
NETHERLANDS  
Tel: +31 70 340 2040  
Fax: +31 70 340 3016



Wichmann, Hendrik  
Wuesthoff & Wuesthoff  
Patentanwälte PartG mbB  
Schweigerstraße 2  
81541 München  
ALLEMAGNE

**Formalities Officer**  
Name: Hübner, Werner  
Tel: +31 70 340 - 2665  
or call  
+31 (0)70 340 45 00

**Substantive Examiner**  
Name: Gómez Gallardo, S  
Tel: +31 70 340 - 9546

Application No. 12 801 372.9 - 1455	Ref. EPA-124 519	Date 08.11.2017
Applicant Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC		

### Result of consultation

A copy of the result of consultation of 06.11.2017 is enclosed for your information.



Gómez Gallardo, S  
**For the Examining Division**

Enclosure(s): Copy of result of consultation (Form 2036)

Datum  
Date 08.11.2017  
Date

Blatt  
Sheet 1  
Feuille

Anmelde-Nr:  
Application No: 12 801 372.9  
Demande n°:

---

The examiner informed the representative that it is possible to grant the Main Request filed on 02.11.2017, and that the Oral Proceedings scheduled for 01.12.2017 will be cancelled. It was noted that an amended description was also submitted on 02.11.2017 together with the claims of the Main Request, and, therefore, is already on file.

**Questions about this communication ?**  
Contact Customer Services at [www.epo.org/contact](http://www.epo.org/contact)



Wichmann, Hendrik  
Wuesthoff & Wuesthoff  
Patentanwälte PartG mbB  
Schweigerstraße 2  
81541 München  
ALLEMAGNE

Date

13.11.2017

Reference EPA-124 519	Application No./Patent No. 12801372.9 - 1455 / 2720699
Applicant/Proprietor Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC	

**BRIEF COMMUNICATION**

**Oral Proceedings on 01.12.17 at 09:00 hours**

Subject:  Your letter of 02.11.2017.....  
 Cancellation / postponement at the instigation of the division

- Communication:
1.  The date / time fixed for oral proceedings is maintained.  
 The reasons are indicated on enclosed EPO Form 2906.
  2.  The request for the oral proceedings to be held as a videoconference is rejected. The reasons are indicated on enclosed EPO Form 2906.
  3.  The above-mentioned oral proceedings will start at ..... hours.
  4.  The summons to attend oral proceedings on the above-mentioned date is cancelled.
    - 4.1  The reasons are indicated on enclosed EPO Form 2906.  
 The procedure will be continued in writing.  
 A new date will be set later.  
 New summons will follow.
    - 4.2  Due to administrative reasons the oral proceedings have to be postponed to a later date. New summons will follow.
    - 4.3  The application is deemed to be withdrawn. The right to oral proceedings only persists as long as proceedings are pending.

Please take note.

**For the Examining Division**



Enclosure : EPO Form 2906

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

1

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

## ADMINISTRATION OF BENZODIAZEPINE COMPOSITIONS

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

[001] This application relates to the nasal administration of benzodiazepine drugs and combinations thereof.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[002] By way of non-limiting example, the benzodiazepine family consists of drugs such as diazepam, lorazepam, and midazolam. The drugs in this family have been observed as possessing sedative, tranquilizing and muscle relaxing properties. They are frequently classified as anxiolytic and skeletal muscle relaxants. They are thought to be useful in preventing, treating, or ameliorating the symptoms of anxiety, insomnia, agitation, seizures (such as those caused by epilepsy), muscle spasms and rigidity, the symptoms of drug withdrawal associated with the continuous abuse of central nervous system depressants, and exposure to nerve agents.

[003] Benzodiazepines are thought to act by binding to the GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor of a neuron, possibly causing the receptor to change shape and making it more accessible to gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA).

[004] GABA is an inhibitory neurotransmitter that, when bound to the GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor, facilitates Cl<sup>-</sup> ions flooding into the neuron to which the receptor is bound. The increase in Cl<sup>-</sup> ions hyperpolarizes the membrane of the neuron. This completely or substantially reduces the ability of the neuron to carry an action potential. Targeting this receptor is particularly useful in treating many disorders, such as tetanus and epilepsy, which may result from too many action potentials proceeding through the nervous system.

[005] Current formulations of benzodiazepine drugs can be administered orally, rectally, or parenterally. The ability to utilize these and other types of formulations has been significantly limited due, in many cases, to solubility challenges.

[006] The oral route of administration may be considered sub-optimal due to several disadvantages. For example, the amount of time required for an orally administered benzodiazepine drug to reach therapeutically relevant concentrations in blood plasma may be rather long, such as an hour or more. Moreover, as benzodiazepine drugs pass through the liver a significant amount of the drug may be metabolized. Thus, large doses may be required to achieve therapeutic plasma levels. Furthermore, due to the nature of seizures and muscle spasms, it can be extremely difficult for either a patient or a care-giver to administer the benzodiazepine drug orally and care-givers may be reluctant to place their hands in patients' mouths.

[007] Intravenous administration perhaps provides a faster route of administration. However intravenous administration is generally limited to trained health care professionals in tightly controlled clinical settings. Additionally, sterility must be maintained. Furthermore, administering any drug intravenously can be painful and is likely impractical for patients suffering from a phobia of needles. In addition, intravenous administration of benzodiazepines is associated with respiratory depression. Thus, use of intravenous benzodiazepines is limited to professional health care environments.

[008] Rectal suppository compositions of benzodiazepine drugs can have a rapid onset of action. However, the inconvenience of rectally administered drug is an obvious impediment to their being administered by anyone outside a very small group of the patient's intimate acquaintances and the patient's professional medical care-givers.

US 2009/258865 A1 discloses intranasal compositions for the treatment of seizures, said compositions comprising (a) a benzodiazepine drug (preferably diazepam), (b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols in an amount of 30-95% (w/w) and (c) one or more alcohols or glycols in an amount of 10-70% (w/w). In some embodiments, the compositions also comprise an alkyl glycoside.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[009] The scope of the invention is defined by the claims. Any references in the description to methods of treatment refer to the compounds, pharmaceutical compositions and medicaments of the present invention for use in a method of treatment of the human (or animal) body by therapy (or for diagnosis).

The invention refers to a pharmaceutical solution for use in a method of treating seizures by nasal administration of said pharmaceutical solution which consists of: (a) a benzodiazepine drug; (b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w); (c) 1-25% (w/v) ethanol and 1-25% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount from 10% to 50% (w/w); (d) an alkyl glycoside; and (e) optionally at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient.

[010] In some embodiments, there are provided pharmaceutical solutions as defined in the claims for use as defined in the claims for administration to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient. The benzodiazepine drug is dissolved in the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w); and ethanol and benzyl alcohol

as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the solution contains 1 to 20 % (w/v) of benzodiazepine, e.g. 1 to 20 % (w/v) of diazepam. In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocopherols, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof. The solution contains ethanol (1-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (1-25 % (w/v)), or ethanol (10-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)), wherein the combined amounts are 10% to 50%. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in the pharmaceutical composition in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 200 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is



in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from about 50% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the alcohols are in an amount from about 15% to 50% (w/w), e.g. about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the solution consists of diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), alkyl glycoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)). In some embodiments, the solution comprises at least 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside, e.g. 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the solution consists of

diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)); more particularly the solution may consist of diazepam (9-11 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.1-0.5 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (15-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)); and even more particularly, the solution may consist of diazepam (10 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.15-0.3 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (17-20 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (10-12 % (w/v)).

**[011]** The pharmaceutical solution is for use in a method of treating seizures, comprising: administering to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient said pharmaceutical solution for nasal administration. The benzodiazepine drug is dissolved in the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w); and ethanol and benzyl alcohol as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in the pharmaceutical composition in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 200 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from about 50% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the solution consists of diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), alkyl glycoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)). In some embodiments, the solution comprises at least 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside, e.g. 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the solution consists of diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)); more particularly the solution may consist of diazepam (9-11 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.1-0.5 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (15-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)); and even more particularly, the solution may consist of diazepam (10 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.15-0.3 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (17-20 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (10-12 % (w/v)). In some embodiments, the patient is human. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is administered in a therapeutically effective amount from about 1 mg to about 20 mg. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is administered as in a dosage volume from about 10 µL to about 200 µL. In some embodiments, the administration of the pharmaceutical composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the benzodiazepine into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the pharmaceutical composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the benzodiazepine into each nostril. In some embodiments, administration of the pharmaceutical composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the pharmaceutical composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the pharmaceutical composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the pharmaceutical composition into the first nostril. In some embodiments, the method further comprises, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the pharmaceutical composition to the second nostril. In some embodiments, nasal administration of the pharmaceutical

composition begins at any time before or after onset of symptoms of a disorder which may be treatable with the pharmaceutical composition. In some embodiments, the treatment achieves bioavailability that is from about 80-125% (e.g. about 90-110%, or more particularly about 92.5-107.5%) of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously, e.g. In this context, it is intended that bioavailability be determined by a suitable pharmacodynamic method, such as comparison of area under the blood plasma concentration curve (AUC) for the nasally and intravenously administered drug. It is further understood that the percent bioavailability of the nasally administered benzodiazepine may be determined by comparing the area under the blood plasma concentration curve obtained with one dose of the benzodiazepine (e.g. 10 mg of nasal diazepam) with another dose of the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously (e.g. 5 mg of i.v. diazepam), taking into consideration the difference in dose. Thus, for the sake of illustration, a 10 mg nasal diazepam dose that achieves an AUC that is precisely half of the AUC obtained with 5 mg of i.v. diazepam would have a bioavailability of 100%. The disorder to be treated is a seizure, such as an epileptic seizure, a breakthrough seizure, or other seizure. In some embodiments, the solution and treatment with the solution are substantially non-irritating and well-tolerated.

**[012]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is dissolved in a carrier system. In some embodiments, at least part of the benzodiazepine drug is in a form comprising benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

**[013]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprozepam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than about 5000 nm. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

**[014]** In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, a synthetic tocopherol can include Vitamin E TPGS (Vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate). In some embodiments, on the other hand, synthetic tocopherols exclude tocopherols covalently bonded or linked (e.g. through a diacid linking group) to a glycol polymer, such as polyethylene glycol). Thus, in some embodiments, the compositions described herein exclude Vitamin E TPGS.

[015] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

[016] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w).

[017] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol in an amount from about 15% to 50% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol in an amount from about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol in an amount of about 30% (w/w).

[018] The composition comprises at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient, such as one or more parabens, and/or one or more povidones.

[020] The pharmaceutical solution is for use in a method of treating seizures as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the patient is a human. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug includes benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

[021] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loperazolam, or any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is fully dissolved in a single phase comprising one or more one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol.

In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some such embodiments, the composition further comprises water. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than about 5000 nm. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

[022] In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof.

[024] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

[025] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w).

[026] In some embodiments, the composition comprises at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient.

[027] In some embodiments, the composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation, and further comprising administering the composition to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of the patient. In some embodiments, the therapeutically effective amount is from about 1 mg to about 20 mg of the benzodiazepine. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation having volume from about 10  $\mu$ L to 200  $\mu$ L.

[028] In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into each nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the composition into the first nostril. Some embodiments further comprise, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the composition to the second nostril.

[029] In some embodiments, the administration of the composition begins at any time before or after onset of symptoms of a disorder which may be treatable with the composition.

[030] Additional advantages of the invention will become apparent to the person skilled in the art upon consideration of the disclosure set forth herein.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[031] Some embodiments of the invention may be further appreciated upon consideration of the appended drawings, of which:

[032] Figure 1 depicts a 240 hour linear plot of the arithmetic mean plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a suspension of Table 11-2, intranasal administration 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1, and 5 mg of diazepam as an intravenous injection.

[033] Figure 2 depicts a 240 hour semi-logarithmic plot of the arithmetic mean plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a suspension of Table 11-2, intranasal administration 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1, and 5 mg of diazepam as an intravenous injection.

[034] Figure 3 depicts a 24 hour linear plot of the arithmetic mean plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a suspension of Table 11-2, intranasal administration 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1, and 5 mg of diazepam as an intravenous injection.

[035] Figure 4 is a Flow Diagram for one embodiment of a process for the manufacture of a diazepam solution according to the instant invention.

[036] Figure 5 is a Flow Diagram for one embodiment of a process for the manufacture of a diazepam suspension not according to the instant invention.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[037] Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions of one or more benzodiazepine drugs for use in methods as defined in the claims. Such pharmaceutical compositions are administered nasally.

[038] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than about 5000 nm. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

[039] In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the carrier system includes one or

more synthetic tocopherols having a polymer glycol covalently bonded or linked to a tocopherol core, such as Vitamin E TPGS, which is described in United States Patent No. 6,193,985. In particular, it has been found that in some particulate suspensions of benzodiazepines, wherein the benzodiazepine is not dissolved in a tocopherol phase, Vitamin E TPGS can be a desirable excipient for stabilizing the particulate (microparticle, nanoparticle or combination) suspension. In some embodiments, on the other hand, the carrier system specifically excludes synthetic tocopherols having a polymer glycol covalently bonded or linked to a tocopherol core, such as Vitamin E TPGS, which is described in United States Patent No. 6,193,985.

**[040]**

In some embodiments, a synthetic tocopherol can include Vitamin E TPGS (Vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate). In some embodiments, on the other hand, synthetic tocopherols exclude tocopherols covalently bonded or linked (e.g. through a diacid linking group) to a glycol polymer, such as polyethylene glycol). Thus, in some embodiments, the compositions described herein exclude Vitamin E TPGS.

**[041]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

**[042]** In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w). In some embodiments, a synthetic tocopherol can include Vitamin E TPGS (Vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate). In some embodiments, on the other hand, synthetic tocopherols exclude tocopherols covalently bonded or linked (e.g. through a diacid linking group) to a glycol polymer, such as polyethylene glycol). Thus, in some embodiments, the compositions described herein exclude Vitamin E TPGS.

**[043]** The carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol

in an amount from 10% to 50%, 10% to about 40%, 10%

to about 35%, about 12% to 50%, about 12% to about 40%, about 12% to about 35%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to about 40%, about 15% to about 35%, 10%, about 12.5%, about 15%, about 17.5%, about 20%, about 22.5%, about 25%, about 27.5%, about 30%, about 32.5%, about 35%, about 37.5%, about 40%, about 42.5%, about 45%, about 47.5%, 50%(w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol

in an amount from about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol in an amount of about 30% (w/w) .

[044] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol in an amount from about 15% to 50% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol in an amount from about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ethanol and benzyl alcohol in an amount of about 30% (w/w).

[045] In some embodiments, the composition comprises at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient.

[046] The compositions comprise at least one alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the at least one alkyl glycoside is one described in United States Patent No. 5,661,130.

[047] In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, ethanol and benzyl alcohol. In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, “substantially free of water” indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, “substantially free of water” indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims, wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, “substantially free of water” indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.)

[048] In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a



solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, and ethanol and benzyl alcohol as defined in the claims. Thus, in some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine

drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, and ethanol and benzyl alcohol

as defined in the claims, wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, “substantially free of water” indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, and one or more alkyl

glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in

the claims wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, “substantially free of water” indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol,

and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol,

and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims, wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, “substantially free of water” indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.)

[049] The following disclosed compositions do not form part of the invention: Disclosed is a composition which contains a benzodiazepine drug that is at least partially in a particulate

form suspended in a carrier system containing a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol and one or more alcohols or glycols. Disclosed is that substantially all the benzodiazepine drug is in a particulate form. Disclosed is that at least part of the benzodiazepine drug is in a microparticulate or nanoparticulate form. The carrier system is one in which the amount of at least one benzodiazepine present in the composition exceeds its solubility in the carrier system. A carrier system in such a composition can include water. Such a liquid carrier system can contain water and one or more excipients. One or more excipients can be dissolved or suspended in the carrier system. The composition can comprise

a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system comprising synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, one or more surfactants and water. The composition can consist

essentially of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting essentially of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, one or more surfactants and water. The

composition can consist of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, one or more surfactants and water. Disclosed is a composition which contains a benzodiazepine drug that is at

least partially in a particulate form suspended in a carrier system containing a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, one or more alcohols or glycols, and an alkyl glycoside.

Substantially all the benzodiazepine drug can be in a particulate form. At least part of the benzodiazepine drug is in a microparticulate or nanoparticulate form. The carrier system is one in which the amount of at least one benzodiazepine present in the composition exceeds its solubility in the carrier system. A carrier system in such a composition can include water. Such a liquid carrier system can contain water and one or more excipients. One or more excipients can be dissolved or suspended in the carrier system. At least one such excipient can stabilize the suspension of benzodiazepine particulates in the carrier system. Benzodiazepine particulate suspensions can specifically exclude one or more polymeric glycols, such as polyethylene glycol. Benzodiazepine particulate suspensions can specifically exclude one or more polymeric glycols having a molecular weight greater than about 200 g/mol. The composition can comprise a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system comprising a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, an alkylglycoside and water. The composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting essentially of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, an alkyl glycoside, optionally a surfactant, and water. The composition can consist of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, an alkyl glycoside, optionally one or more surfactants, and water.

**[050]** Also disclosed is the use of the composition for treating a patient with a disorder that may be treatable with a

benzodiazepine drug. In some embodiments, the patient is a human. In some embodiments, the use comprises: administering to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient a pharmaceutical composition for nasal administration as disclosed above.

**[051]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, or any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than about 5000 nm.

**[052]** In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs or derivatives thereof, and any combinations thereof. A synthetic tocopherol may include a tocopherol that has been modified to include a hydrophilic group, such as a polyethylene glycol group, which may be directly covalently bonded to the tocopherol or may be linked to the tocopherol through a covalent linking group, such as a diacid. An exemplary synthetic tocopherol of this type is Vitamin E Polyethylene Glycol Succinate

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

12

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

(Vitamin E TPGS), although the person skilled in the art will be able to envision other synthetic tocopherols that have similar diacid and/or hydrophilic groups.

**[053]** In some embodiments, one or more glycols are present as excipients and are selected from the group consisting of: ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, butylene glycol, pentylene glycol, any isomers thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, one or more glycols specifically excludes polymeric glycols, such as polyethylene glycol. In some embodiments, one or more glycols specifically excludes a polymeric glycol having a molecular weight of greater than about 200 g/mol.

**[054]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

**[055]** In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 45% to about 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w). In some embodiments, especially where particulate suspensions of a benzodiazepine drug are contemplated, the compositions may include a tocopherol, especially a synthetic tocopherol having a hydrophilic group covalently linked to a tocopherol. In other embodiments, especially where a solution of benzodiazepine drug is contemplated, the tocopherol is substantially or completely free of Vitamin E TPGS.

**[056]** In some embodiments, the composition comprises at least one additional ingredient selected from the group consisting of: active pharmaceutical ingredients; enhancers; excipients; and agents used to adjust the pH, buffer the composition, prevent degradation, and improve appearance, odor, or taste.

**[057]** In some embodiments, a composition comprises at least one penetration enhancer in addition to a benzodiazepine drug, a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, and an alcohol or glycol. In some embodiments, the penetration enhancer is an alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside refers to any sugar joined to any hydrophobic alkyl, as described in United States patent number 5,661,130. The hydrophobic alkyl can be any suitable length, for example about 9 to about 24 carbons in length, especially about 10 to about 14 carbons in length. The hydrophobic alkyl can be branched and/or partially or wholly unsaturated. The alkyl may be joined to the saccharide core for example through a carbonyl group, whereby an ester group may be formed. A suitable alkyl glycoside will have the characteristics of being nontoxic, nonionic, and capable of increasing the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug when it is administered intranasally as described herein. Exemplary saccharides that may be covalently joined to an alkyl according to the present invention include glucose, maltose, maltotriose, maltotetrose, sucrose and trehalose. Exemplary alkyl glycosides that may be employed include octyl-, nonyl-, decyl-, undecyl-, dodecyl, tridecyl, tetradecyl,

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

13

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

pentadecyl, octadecyl  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -D-maltoside, -glucoside or sucroside. In some embodiments, the preferred glycosides include maltose, sucrose or glucose linked by glycosidic linkage to an alkyl chain of 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18 or 20 carbon atoms. Where present, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is sufficient to enhance the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug administered by the intranasal route. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is selected so as to enhance absorption of the benzodiazepine drug, while at the same time not significantly irritating the nasal mucosa. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.01% (w/v) to about 1% (w/v). In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.05% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v), or about 0.125% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v).

**[058]** In some embodiments, the composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation, and further comprising administering the composition to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of the patient. In some embodiments, the therapeutically effective amount is from about 1 mg to about 20 mg of the benzodiazepine. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation having volume from about 10  $\mu$ L to 200  $\mu$ L.

**[059]** In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into each nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the composition into the first nostril. Some embodiments further comprise, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the composition to the second nostril.

**[060]** In some embodiments, the administration of the composition begins at any time before or after onset of symptoms of a disorder which may be treatable with the composition.

## Definitions

**[061]** As used herein the phrase “therapeutically effective amount” (or more simply “effective amount”) includes an amount sufficient to provide a specific therapeutic response for which the drug is administered to a patient in need of particular treatment. The skilled clinician will recognize that the therapeutically effective amount of drug will depend upon the patient, the indication and the particular drug administered.

**[062]** As used herein, the modifier “about” is intended to have its regularly recognized meaning of approximately. In some embodiments, the term may be more precisely interpreted as meaning within a particular percentage of the modified value, e.g. “about” may in some embodiments mean  $\pm 20\%$ ,  $\pm 10\%$ ,  $\pm 5\%$ ,  $\pm 2\%$ , or  $\pm 1\%$  or less.

**[063]** As used herein, the phrase “analogous or derivatives” includes molecules that differ from one another molecule due to one or more atoms or functional groups having been replaced with a different atom or

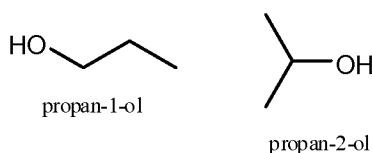
EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

14

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

functional group. This may result in molecules with similar chemical formulas but different chemical and/or biological properties.

[064] As used herein, the term, “isomer” includes molecules with identical chemical formulas, but between which the arrangement of the molecules may vary. These varying arrangements may result in molecules with identical chemical formulas but different chemical properties. By way of non-limiting example, propanol has the chemical formula  $C_3H_7OH$ . It may be found as propan-1-ol, wherein the  $-OH$  is found attached to an end carbon. Alternatively, it may be found as propan-2-ol, wherein the  $-OH$  is found attached to the second carbon.



[065] As used herein, the term “seizure” includes commonly recognized types of seizures, including absence seizures, myoclonic seizures, clonic seizures, tonic seizures, tonic-clonic seizures, and atonic seizures. Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. Each patient will generally experience a different type of aura, which is unique to the patient; however auras may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or at least often, precedes a patient’s experiencing a seizure. (Not all patients who suffer seizures experience aura; however aura are not uncommon amongst those who suffer the worst type of seizures, especially tonic-clonic seizures.)

[066] As used herein, the term “prevention” refers to a forestalling, including temporary forestalling, of the onset of a disorder. In the case of seizures, this can occur either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[067] As used herein, the term “treatment” refers to a reduction in the intensity and/or duration of a disorder, or similar effects. The term also encompasses the side-effects of such a “treatment.”

[068] As used herein, unless otherwise qualified, “a” and “an” can mean one or more.

[069] As used herein, the term “comprising” in all its variants, is a transitional phrase used in a claim to indicate that the invention includes or contains, but is not limited to, the specifically recited claim elements.

[070] As used herein, the phrase “consisting essentially of” is a transitional phrase used in a claim to indicate that the a following list of ingredients, parts or process steps must be present in the claimed composition, machine or process, but that the claim is open to unlisted ingredients, parts or process steps that do not materially affect the basic and novel properties of the invention.

[071] As used herein, the term “consisting of” is a transitional phrase used in a claim to indicate that the claimed invention includes only those elements set forth in the claim.

### **Benzodiazepine Drugs**

[072] In the context of the present invention, the term “benzodiazepine drug” includes any therapeutically effective benzodiazepine compound, or pharmaceutically acceptable salt, or combinations thereof. In some

embodiments, benzodiazepine comprises a member of the group consisting of alprazolam, diazepam, flurazepam, lorazepam, medazepam, mexazolam, midazolam, temazepam and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and combinations thereof.

[073] It should be recognized by those of skill in the art that additional benzodiazepine compounds that have heretofore been considered to have marginal or little therapeutic benefit, either because of low bioavailability, poor pharmacokinetic properties or poor pharmacodynamic properties, may find use through the present invention, which can provide for improved bioavailability of benzodiazepine drugs, delivery of higher concentrations of benzodiazepine drugs via the nasal route, faster attainment of therapeutic levels of benzodiazepine in the blood plasma, avoidance of the liver portal vein and concomitant avoidance of first pass effects and/or faster presentation of benzodiazepine drug to the brain.

[074] For example, most benzodiazepines are so slightly soluble in water that a therapeutically effective amount cannot be dissolved in a volume of aqueous solvent that is amenable to application to a mucosal membrane. By use of the present carrier system, which in some embodiments, provides an improved ability to dissolve benzodiazepine drugs, the present invention allows benzodiazepine drugs to be administered to nasal mucosal membranes. This can allow one to administer the drug without hospitalization or unnecessary discomfort. Additionally, by nasal administration, the digestive system largely may be bypassed. This latter improvement can yield improved bioavailability, faster attainment of therapeutic levels of benzodiazepine in the blood plasma, avoidance of the liver portal vein, and/or concomitant avoidance of first pass effects.

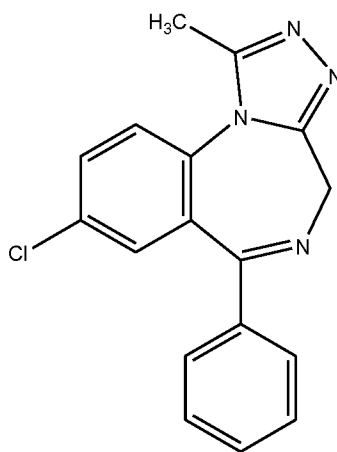
[075] Nasal administration of the composition can result in faster presentation of the one or more benzodiazepine drugs to the brain due to the close proximity of the membranes and the brain. A seizing patient, for example, suffers from rigid muscles and uncontrollable movement. This can make oral and/or intravenous administration difficult or inconvenient. However, the nasal passageways remain open and easily accessible, and therefore is a useful route of administration for the present invention.

[076] The pharmaceutical composition is used as defined in the claims to treat seizures.

[077] In some embodiments, the one or more benzodiazepine drugs, are used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure.

[078] **Alprazolam** (8-chloro-6-phenyl-1-methyl-4H-1,2,4-triazolo[4,3-a][1,4]benzodiazepine).





**[079]** Alprazolam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Alprazolam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of panic disorder. The dosage of alprazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.5 to about 4, preferably about 1 to about 2 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Alprazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,987,052.

**[080]** In some embodiments, alprazolam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

**[081]** In some embodiments, alprazolam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Alprazolam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of alprazolam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of alprazolam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or *status epilepticus*, administration of alprazolam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with alprazolam to provide an anticonvulsant or synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

**[082]** Alprazolam may also be administered by another person (*e.g.* an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure victim nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute nasal dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are:

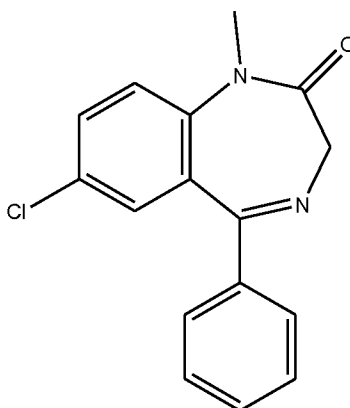
reduction in the severity of the seizure (*e.g.* general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the

patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the alprazolam nasal formulations of the invention provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The alprazolam nasal formulations of the invention

also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[083] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[084] **Diazepam** (7-chloro-1-methyl-5-phenyl-1,3-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)



[085] Diazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic and skeletal muscle relaxant. It possesses anxiolytic, anticonvulsant, sedative, skeletal muscle relaxant and amnesic properties. The dosage of diazepam may vary by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 20, preferably about 2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Diazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 3,371,085; 3,109,843; 3,136,815 or 3,102,116.

[086] In some embodiments, diazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

[087] In some embodiments, diazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Diazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of diazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of diazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of diazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with diazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[088] Diazepam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure victim nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute nasal dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are:

reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the diazepam nasal formulations of the invention provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The diazepam nasal formulations of the invention also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

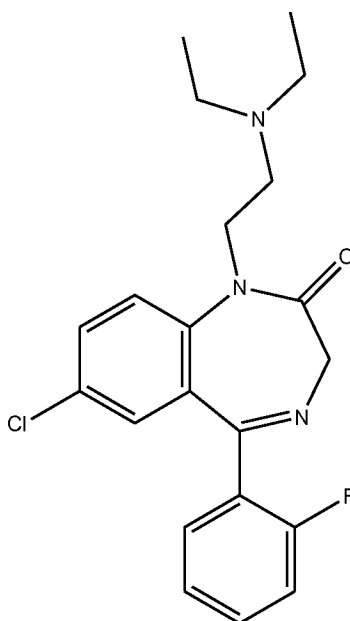
[089] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[090] **Flurazepam** (7-chloro-5-(2-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-(2-(diethylamino)ethyl)-1H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

19

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017



**[091]** Flurazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative (especially soporific and hypnotic), anxiolytic, anticonvulsant and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an sedative, hypnotic. Flurazepam has been shown to be useful in the treatment of insomnia. The dosage of flurazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 5 to 40, preferably about 20 to about 35 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Flurazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,567,710 or 3,299,053.

**[092]** In some embodiments, flurazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

**[093]** In some embodiments, flurazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Flurazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of flurazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of flurazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of flurazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with flurazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

**[094]** Flurazepam may also be administered by another person (*e.g.* an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in

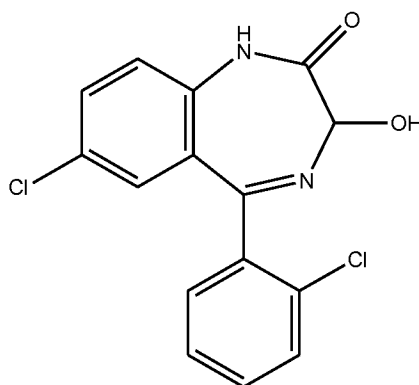
an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure victim nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute nasal dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are:

reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the flurazepam nasal formulations of the invention provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The flurazepam nasal formulations of the invention

also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[095] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[096] **Lorazepam** (7-chloro-5-(2-chlorophenyl)-3-hydroxy-1,3-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)



[097] Lorazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Lorazepam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of nausea. The dosage of lorazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Lorazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,296,249.

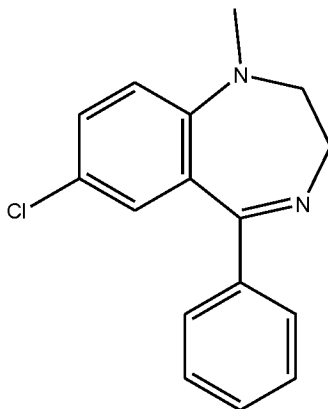
[098] In some embodiments, lorazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

[099] In some embodiments, lorazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Lorazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of lorazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of lorazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of lorazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with lorazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[0100] Lorazepam may also be administered by another person (*e.g.* an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure <sup>victim</sup> nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute <sup>nasal</sup> dosing of benzodiazepine <sup>anticonvulsants</sup> are:

reduction in the severity of the seizure (*e.g.* general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the lorazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The lorazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[0101] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

**[0102] Medazepam** ((7-chloro-1-methyl-5-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1,4-benzodiazepine)

**[0103]** Medazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Medazepam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of nausea. The dosage of medazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Medazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,243,427.

**[0104]** In some embodiments, medazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

**[0105]** In some embodiments, medazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Medazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of medazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of medazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of medazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with medazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

**[0106]** Medazepam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure victim nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute nasal dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are:

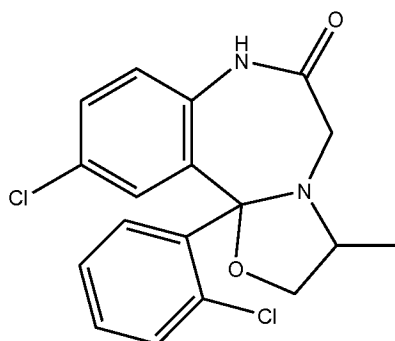
reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the

patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the medazepam nasal formulations of the invention provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The medazepam nasal formulations of the invention

also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

**[0107]** Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

**[0108] Mexazolam** (10-Chloro-11b-(2-chlorophenyl)-1,3,7,11b-tetrahydro-3-methyloxazolo[3,2-d][1,4]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-one)



**[0109]** Mexazolam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Mexazolam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of nausea. The dosage of mexazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Mexazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,722,371.

**[0110]** In some embodiments, mexazolam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

**[0111]** In some embodiments, mexazolam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Mexazolam may be administered



by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of mexazolam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of mexazolam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of mexazolam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with mexazolam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

**[0112]** Mexazolam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure victim nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute nasal dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are:

reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the mexazolam nasal formulations of the invention provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The mexazolam nasal formulations of the invention

also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

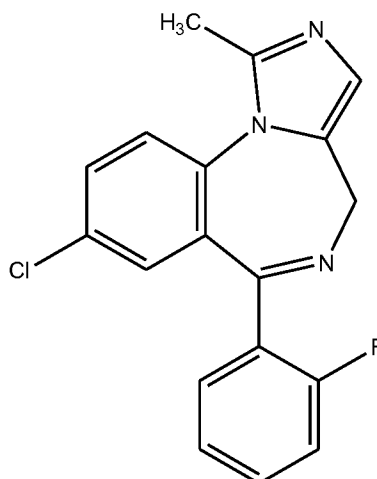
**[0113]** Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

**[0114]** **Midazolam** (8-chloro-6-(2-fluorophenyl)-1-methyl-4H-imidazo(1,5-a)benzodiazepine).

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

25

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017



**[0115]** Midazolam is a tricyclic benzodiazepine having anxiolytic, amnesic, hypnotic, anticonvulsant, skeletal muscle relaxant and sedative properties. Midazolam is considered soluble in water at a pH lower than about 4, but is relatively insoluble in most aqueous solutions at neutral pH (e.g. about 6 to 8). Thus it is desirable in some embodiments for aqueous nasal preparations of midazolam to have a pH above about 5.5, preferably above about 6.0, or above about 6.5. In some preferred embodiments, the pH is between about 6 and 9, between about 6 and 8. It is considered that preparations of midazolam are particularly suitable for nasal administration as the lipid-soluble (at approximately neutral pH) midazolam is rapidly absorbed across nasal mucosa, leading to efficient uptake of midazolam. It is further considered that midazolam may be formulated in a non-aqueous delivery vehicle, such as is known in the aerosol administration art, such as hydrofluorocarbon propellants, hydrocarbon propellants, etc.

**[0116]** The dosage of midazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 20, preferably about 0.2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Midazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 4,280,957 or 5,831,089.

**[0117]** In some embodiments, midazolam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

**[0118]** In some embodiments, midazolam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Midazolam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of midazolam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of midazolam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of midazolam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In

addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with midazolam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

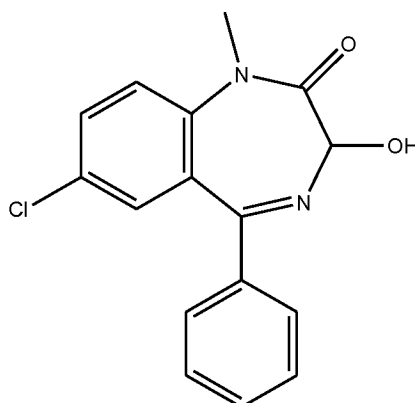
[0119] Midazolam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure victim nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute nasal dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are:

reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the midazolam nasal formulations of the invention provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The midazolam nasal formulations of the invention

also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[0120] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[0121] **Temazepam** (7-chloro-1-methyl-5-phenyl-3-hydroxy-1,3-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)



[0122] Temazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Temazepam has also been shown to be useful in

the treatment of nausea. The dosage of temazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 50, preferably about 5 to about 30 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Temazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,340,253 or 3,374,225.

**[0123]** In some embodiments, temazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

**[0124]** In some embodiments, temazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Temazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of temazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of temazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of temazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with temazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

**[0125]** Temazepam may also be administered by another person (*e.g.* an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure *victim* nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute *nasal* dosing of benzodiazepine *anticonvulsants* are:

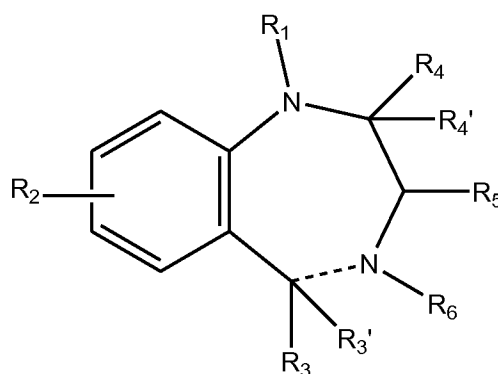
reduction in the severity of the seizure (*e.g.* general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the *temazepam nasal* formulations of the *invention* provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The *temazepam nasal* formulations of the *invention* also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

**[0126]** Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during

the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

### Pharmaceutically Acceptable Salts

[0127] Benzodiazepines have the generally basic structure of formula I:



**Formula I**

wherein  $R_1$ - $R_5$  are substituents. In particular embodiments,  $R_1$  is an optionally substituted alkyl or forms a ring with  $R_4$ ,  $R_2$  is a halogen (e.g. Cl, Br),  $R_3$  is optionally substituted aryl (e.g. 2-Chloro or 2-Fluorophenyl),  $R_5$  is H or OH,  $R_4$  and  $R_4'$  together form a carbonyl (C=O) with the carbon to which they are attached or  $R_4$  and  $R_1$  form an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring with the diazepam ring atoms to which they are respectively attached;  $R_3'$  and  $R_6$  together form a double bond or may be combined to form an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring along with the diazepam ring atoms to which they are respectively attached. Such basic compounds may form acid addition salts with pharmaceutically acceptable acids, such as pharmaceutically acceptable mineral acids and pharmaceutically acceptable organic acids.

[0128] Pharmaceutically acceptable mineral acids include HCl,  $H_2SO_4$ ,  $H_2SO_3$ ,  $H_3PO_4$ ,  $H_3PO_3$ , and others that will be recognized by those of skill in the art. Pharmaceutically acceptable organic acids include acetic acid, benzoic acid, tartaric acid, citric acid, oxalic acid, maleic acid, malonic acid, etc. Thus, in some embodiments, the pharmaceutically acceptable acid may be selected from the group consisting of: 1-hydroxy-2-naphthoic acid, 2,2-dichloroacetic acid, 2-hydroxyethanesulfonic acid, 2-oxoglutaric acid, 4-acetamidobenzoic acid, 4-aminosalicylic acid, acetic acid, adipic acid, ascorbic acid (L), aspartic acid (L), benzenesulfonic acid, benzoic acid, camphoric acid (+), camphor-10-sulfonic acid (+), capric acid (decanoic acid), caproic acid (hexanoic acid), caprylic acid (octanoic acid), carbonic acid, cinnamic acid, citric acid, cyclamic acid, dodecylsulfuric acid, ethane-1,2-disulfonic acid, ethanesulfonic acid, formic acid, fumaric acid, galactaric acid, gentisic acid, glucoheptonic acid (D), gluconic acid (D), glucuronic acid (D), glutamic acid,

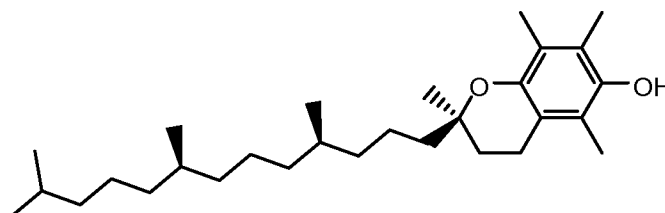
glutaric acid, glycerophosphoric acid, glycolic acid, hippuric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydrochloric acid, isobutyric acid, lactic acid (DL), lactobionic acid, lauric acid, maleic acid, malic acid (- L), malonic acid, mandelic acid (DL), methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid (besylic acid), naphthalene-1,5-disulfonic acid, naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid, nicotinic acid, nitric acid, oleic acid, oxalic acid, palmitic acid, pamoic acid, phosphoric acid, propionic acid, pyroglutamic acid (- L), salicylic acid, sebacic acid, stearic acid, succinic acid, sulfuric acid, tartaric acid (+ L), thiocyanic acid, toluenesulfonic acid (p) and undecylenic acid. Other pharmaceutically acceptable acids may be pharmaceutically acceptable acidic (anionic) polymers or pharmaceutically acceptable amphoteric polymers. One skilled in the art will recognize that other basic active pharmaceutical ingredients may be combined with the foregoing acids to produce acid addition salts. Likewise the person skilled in the art will recognize that in some embodiments it may be advantageous that some or all of the added acid be an active pharmaceutical ingredient in its own right.

**[0129]** In some embodiments, the invention provides nasal compositions comprising one or more acidic pharmaceutically active ingredients. It is considered well within the ordinary skill in the art to determine which of the compounds set for the above are acidic. Such compounds may be prepared as base addition salts, e.g. by the addition of one or more mineral bases (e.g. NaOH, KOH, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, NH<sub>3</sub>) or organic bases. It is considered within the skill in the art to choose a pharmaceutically acceptable base.

**[0130]** Known benzodiazepine compounds have anxiolytic, anticonvulsant, sedative and/or skeletal muscle relaxant effect. The term “anticonvulsant” includes treatment of seizures, protection against seizure, reduction or amelioration of the intensity of seizure, reduction or amelioration of the frequency of seizure, and/or prevention of the occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. In this regard, treatment of seizure includes cessation of an ongoing seizure, reduction in the severity of an ongoing seizure, reduction in the duration of an ongoing seizure. Protection against seizure includes forestalling an oncoming seizure.

### Carrier System

**[0131]** Vitamin E is a class of fat soluble methylated phenols. There are at least eight naturally-occurring compounds that comprise this class:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol, and  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, all of which may be used in the compositions and methods of the present invention. There are multiple isomers of each of these compounds, all of which may be used in the compositions and methods of the present invention. There are also multiple esters of each of these compounds, including tocophersolan, all of which may be used in the compositions and methods of the present invention. As used herein, Vitamin E refers to any of the natural or synthetic tocopherols, tocotrienols, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, or any combinations thereof.



### **$\alpha$ -tocopherol**

[0132] The compounds that comprise Vitamin E are antioxidants. There is also evidence that they can prevent, delay the onset of, or ameliorate the symptoms of heart disease, cancer, cataracts, macular degeneration, glaucoma, Alzheimer's, and Parkinson's disease.

[0133] The inventors have found that Vitamin E can provide an effective carrier for benzodiazepine drugs. In some embodiments, benzodiazepines are soluble, or partially soluble, in Vitamin E. In some embodiments, Vitamin E may be present as microparticles, nanoparticles, or any combination thereof. Furthermore, use of Vitamin E can have the added benefit of either avoiding irritation of sensitive mucosal membranes and/or soothing irritated mucosal membranes.

[0134] Vitamin E is generally classified as hydrophobic, and when used as a carrier may be limited to formulations as an emulsion. However, emulsions can have several drawbacks. For instance, they may be difficult to create and can be highly unstable. Additionally, they can leave an oily film on the surface of the skin. Thus, to avoid the drawbacks of emulsions, some embodiments of the present invention comprise solutions of one or more benzodiazepine drugs in Vitamin E, ethanol and benzyl alcohol.

### **Additional Excipients**

[0137] The composition comprises

at least one alkyl glycoside as penetration enhancer. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside refers to any sugar joined to any hydrophobic alkyl, as described in United States patent number 5,661,130. The hydrophobic alkyl can be any suitable length, for example about 9 to about 24 carbons in length, especially about 10 to about 14 carbons in length. The hydrophobic alkyl can be branched and/or partially or wholly unsaturated. The alkyl may be joined to the saccharide core for example through a carbonyl group, whereby an ester group may be formed. A suitable alkyl glycoside will have the characteristics of being nontoxic, nonionic, and capable of increasing the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug when it is administered intranasally as described herein. Exemplary saccharides that may be covalently joined to an alkyl according to the present invention include glucose, maltose, maltotriose, maltotetrose, sucrose and trehalose. Exemplary alkyl glycosides that may be employed include octyl-, nonyl-, decyl-, undecyl-, dodecyl-, tridecyl-, tetradecyl-, pentadecyl-, octadecyl  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -D-maltoside, -glucoside or sucroside. In some embodiments, the preferred glycosides include maltose, sucrose or glucose linked by glycosidic linkage to an alkyl chain of 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18 or 20 carbon atoms. Specific excipients that may be employed in a nasal composition according to the invention include alkylsaccharide is dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose

dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or combinations of two or more thereof. Alkyl glycosides that are particularly considered useful in embodiments of the invention include those marketed under the name Intravail<sup>®</sup> by Aegis Therapeutics, LLC, San Diego, CA. Other alkyl glycosides may be selected from those having a hydrophile-lipophile balance (HLB) number of from about 10-20, especially about 11-15. The HLB number may be determined as set forth in the publication US2009/0047347, published on 19 February 2009, the entirety of which, and especially paragraphs [0075]-[0079]. The amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is sufficient to enhance the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug administered by the intranasal route. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is selected so as to enhance absorption of the benzodiazepine drug, while at the same time not significantly irritating the nasal mucosa. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.01% (w/v) to about 1% (w/v). In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.05% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v), or about 0.125% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v).

**[0138]** The term "penetration enhancer", means any material which acts to increase absorption across the mucosa and/or increases bioavailability. In some embodiments, such materials include mucolytic agents, degradative enzyme inhibitors and compounds which increase permeability of the mucosal cell membranes. Whether a given compound is an "enhancer" can be determined by comparing two formulations comprising a non-associated, small polar molecule as the drug, with or without the enhancer, in an in vivo or good model test and determining whether the uptake of the drug is enhanced to a clinically significant degree. The enhancer should not produce any problems in terms of chronic toxicity because in vivo the enhancer should be non-irritant and/or rapidly metabolized to a normal cell constituent that does not have any significant irritant effect.

**[0139]** In some embodiments, preferred enhancing materials are lysophospholipids, for example

lysophosphatidylcholine obtainable from egg or soy lecithin. Other lysophosphatidylcholines that have different acyl groups as well as lyso compounds produced from phosphatidylethanolamines and phosphatidic acid which have similar membrane modifying properties may be used. Acyl carnitines (e.g. palmitoyl-dl-carnitine-chloride) is an alternative. In some embodiments, a suitable concentration is from 0.02 to 20% (w/v).

**[0140]** In some embodiments, enhancing agents that are appropriate include chelating agents (EGTA, EDTA, alginates), surface active agents (especially non-ionic materials), acyl glycerols, fatty acids and salts, tyloxapol and biological detergents listed in the SIGMA Catalog, 1988, page 316-321. Also agents that modify the membrane fluidity and permeability are appropriate such as enamines (e.g. phenylalanine enamine of ethylacetoacetate), malonates (e.g. diethyleneoxymethylene malonate), salicylates, bile salts and analogues and fusidates. Suitable concentrations are up to 20% (w/v).

**[0141]** Thus, in some embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for nasal administration comprising: a benzodiazepine drug, one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w); one or more alkyl glycosides; and ethanol and benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount from



10% to 50% (w/w), in a pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation for administration to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is an Intravail<sup>®</sup> brand alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or a combination of two or more thereof. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is tetradecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose dodecanoate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose monostearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose distearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is a combination of two or more of dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, or sucrose distearate.

[0142] Thus, in some embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for nasal administration comprising: a benzodiazepine drug, which benzodiazepine drug comprises microparticles, nanoparticles or both, one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w); one or more alkyl glycosides; and ethanol and benzyl alcohol,

in a combined amount from 10% to 50% (w/w), in a pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation for administration to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is an Intravail<sup>®</sup> brand alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or a combination of two or more thereof. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is tetradecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose dodecanoate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose monostearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose distearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is a combination of two or more of dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, or sucrose distearate.

### **Nasal Preparations**

[0143] Nasal preparations are generally administered in metered sprays having volumes of less than 250  $\mu\text{L}$ , preferably less than 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , and ideally from 25 to 100  $\mu\text{L}$ . Although not prohibited in this invention, administration of volumes larger than about 300  $\mu\text{L}$  per dose usually exceeds the absorption capacity of the membranes. This results in a large portion of the pharmaceutically-active ingredient being lost.

[0144] The dosage volume of the preparations preferably ranges from 25 to 100  $\mu\text{L}$ . Volumes in excess of the aforementioned ranges may bypass the sinuses and flow down the back of the throat where the excess is swallowed.

### **Alprazolam**

[0145] The dosage of alprazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.5 to about 4, preferably about 1 to about 2 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Alprazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,987,052.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

33

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

**[0146]** As a nasal formulation, alprazolam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, alprazolam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays

#### **Diazepam**

**[0147]** The dosage of diazepam may vary by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 20, preferably about 2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Diazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 3,371,085, 3,109,843, 3,136,815 or 3,102,116.

**[0148]** As a nasal formulation, diazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, diazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Flurazepam**

**[0149]** The dosage of flurazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 5 to 40, preferably about 20 to about 35 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Flurazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,567,710 or 3,299,053.

**[0150]** As a nasal formulation, flurazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, flurazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Lorazepam**

**[0151]** The dosage of Lorazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Lorazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,296,249.

**[0152]** As a nasal formulation, lorazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, lorazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Medazepam**

**[0153]** The dosage of medazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Medazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,243,427.

**[0154]** As a nasal formulation, medazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, medazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Mexazolam**

**[0155]** The dosage of mexazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Mexazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,722,371.

**[0156]** As a nasal formulation, mexazolam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, mexazolam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

**Midazolam**

[0157] The dosage of midazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 20, preferably about 0.2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Midazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 4,280,957 or 5,831,089.

[0158] As a nasal formulation, midazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, midazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays.

**Temazepam**

[0159] The dosage of temazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 50, preferably about 5 to about 30 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Temazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,340,253 or 3,374,225.

[0160] As a nasal formulation, temazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, temazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays.

**Formulation**

[0161] Some embodiments comprise administering to the nasal membranes of a patient a therapeutically effective amount of one or more benzodiazepine drugs, or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof. Some embodiments of the composition disclose a composition comprising one or more benzodiazepine drugs or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof in a concentration up to about 600 mg/mL. Other embodiments

disclose a composition comprising one or more benzodiazepine drugs or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof in a concentration of about 10 mg/mL up to about 250 mg/mL. Further, some embodiments disclose a composition comprising one or more benzodiazepine drugs or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof in a concentration of about 20 mg/mL up to about 50 mg/mL.

[0162] Some embodiments disclose a carrier system that is about 50% to about 90% (w/w) Vitamin E and 10% to 50% (w/w) of a combination of ethanol and benzyl alcohol. Some embodiments disclose a carrier system that is about 65% to about 75% (w/w) Vitamin E and about 25% to about 35% (w/w) of a combination of ethanol and benzyl alcohol. Further, some embodiments disclose a carrier system that is about 70% (w/w) Vitamin E and about 30% (w/w) of a combination of ethanol and benzyl alcohol.

[0163] Disclosed is also the administration of the benzodiazepine drug composition to a patient. The preferred embodiment comprises use of diazepam. Some embodiments disclose a dosage level of diazepam of about 1.0 mg to about 20.0 mg until achievement of the desired result. Other dosage levels disclose a dosage level of about 2.0 mg to about 15.0 mg until the desired result is achieved. Some embodiments disclose a dosage level of about 5.0 mg to about 10.0 mg until the desired result is achieved.

**[0164]** In some embodiments of the method, the dosage volume ranges from about 10  $\mu\text{L}$  to about 200  $\mu\text{L}$ . In some embodiments, the dosage volume ranges from about 20  $\mu\text{L}$  to about 180  $\mu\text{L}$ . Further, some embodiments disclose a dosage volume of about 50  $\mu\text{L}$  to about 140  $\mu\text{L}$ . In some embodiments, the dosage volume is 50  $\mu\text{L}$ , 75  $\mu\text{L}$  or 100  $\mu\text{L}$  per nostril.

#### Formulation Process

**[0165]** In some embodiments, the composition for nasal administration is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition is made by slowly warming or heating the Vitamin E until it is liquefied. Next, the one or more benzodiazepine drugs are added. The mixture is stirred and heated until the one or more benzodiazepine drugs dissolve or are substantially dissolved. Next, both ethanol and benzyl alcohol are added to the composition. This composition is stirred until a less viscous composition is achieved.

**[0166]** The formulation process may be adjusted to take into consideration variations in the formulation. For example, as depicted in Figure 4, formulations comprising both benzyl alcohol and ethanol may be formulated by first combining Vitamin E, benzyl alcohol and ethanol (*e.g.*, dehydrated alcohol, USP), mixing until the ingredients are homogenous, heating the mixture to about 45°C ( $\pm 2^\circ\text{C}$ ), adding alkyl glycoside and mixing

until the alkyl glycoside is dissolved and the solution is homogenous, adding benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam) while maintaining the mixture at about 45 °C, cooling the solution to about 25°C ( $\pm 2^\circ\text{C}$ ) and adding ethanol (Q.S.) to achieve the final target weight of solution, mixing well to assure homogeneity. Solutions manufactured according to this process may be formulated in different concentrations of diazepam. For example, some embodiments of the invention include diazepam formulations summarized in the following table. While diazepam is used as an illustration in Figure 4 and the following table, any benzodiazepines may also be used, such as alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof.

**[0167]** NRL-1 Quantitative Composition. The formulations are for nasal administration.

Component	Solution Concentration		
	50mg/mL	75 mg/mL	100 mg/mL
Vitamin E	56.47 mg	56.47 mg	56.47 mg
Benzyl alcohol	10.50 mg	10.50 mg	10.50 mg
Diazepam	5.00 mg	7.50 mg	10.00 mg
Intravail A3 <sup>®</sup>	0.25 mg	0.25 mg	0.25 mg
Dehydrated ethanol	q.s. to 100 $\mu\text{L}$	q.s. to 100 $\mu\text{L}$	q.s. to 100 $\mu\text{L}$

[0168] In some embodiments, the aforementioned formulations are sterile solutions with a bacteria count of 10 below the allowable level on a per mL basis. Additionally, pathogens are preferably absent. In some embodiments, the solutions are self-preserving, self-sterile or both.

[0169] <sup>A</sup> microparticulate and/or nanoparticulate suspension of the benzodiazepine could be accomplished by methods such as milling, etc. Such methods are known to those skilled in the art.

[0170] Figure 5 depicts one embodiment of a process of manufacturing a suspension of benzodiazepine not

according to the instant invention. First, the benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam) is sieved to produce a micronized benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam). The micronized benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam) is then split into two intermediates products - Diazepam A (high pressure) is a small particle size (mean particle size < 2000 nm) and Diazepam B (low pressure) is a large particle size (mean particle diameter > 2000 nm). After in-process testing, the two intermediate products are combined with one or more excipients in correct proportions to produce a bimodal particle suspension having a pre-selected mean particle diameter, which in some embodiments is greater than 2000 nm. In some embodiments, the excipients are prepared according to the second column in Figure 5, *e.g.* by first combining propylene glycol, water and vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate to form a mixture and heating the mixture until the ingredients are dissolved, then adding methylparaben, propyl paraben and Intravail<sup>TM</sup> (alkyl glycoside) to the mixture and mixing until the newly added ingredients are dissolved, and finally cooling the mixture, *e.g.* to 25°C ± 2°C. The excipients can then be combined with Micronized Diazepam A and Micronized Diazepam B and mixed vigorously to disperse the micronized Diazepam to form the suspension. Next, povidone is added to the mixture, which is mixed until the povidone is fully dissolved. Finally, the suspension is brought to its final target weight with purified water and mixed well to achieve homogeneity. The final product can then be filled into suitable containers. In some embodiments, 3 mL may be filled into 4 mL amber glass vials with PTFE lined phenolic closures, though other containers are of course possible. As diazepam is depicted in Figure 5 as an exemplary benzodiazepine, any benzodiazepines, such as alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof may also be employed.

[0171]

[0172] In the present invention,

the benzodiazepine drug is formulated as a solution. It is considered an aspect of the invention that employment of microparticulate and/or nanoparticulate benzodiazepine drug during the process of preparing the formulation can

improve the overall solubility of the benzodiazepine drug in the solvent system.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

37

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

### **Additional Active and Inactive Ingredients**

**[0173]** Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional ingredient in the composition selected from active ingredients. By way of non-limiting example, such active ingredients include insulin, calcitonins (for example porcine, human, salmon, chicken, or eel) and synthetic modifications thereof, enkephalins, LHRH and analogues (Nafarelin, Buserelin, Zolidex), GHRH (growth hormone releasing hormone), nifedipin, THF (thymic humoral factor), CGRP (calcitonin gene related peptide), atrial natriuretic peptide, antibiotics, metoclopramide, ergotamine, Pizotizin, nasal vaccines (particularly HIV vaccines, measles, rhinovirus Type 13 and respiratory syncytial virus), pentamidine, CCK (Cholecystikinine), DDVAP, Interferons, growth hormone (solatotropir polypeptides or their derivatives (preferably with a molecular weight from 1000 to 300000)), secretin, bradykinin antagonists, GRF (Growth releasing factor), THF, TRH (Thyrotropin releasing hormone), ACTH analogues, IGF (Insulin like growth factors), CGRP (Calcitonin gene related peptide) Atrial Natriuretic peptide, Vasopressin and analogues (DDAVP, Lypressin), Metoclopramide, Migraine treatment (Dihydroergotamine, Ergometrine, Ergotamine, Pizotizin), Nasal Vaccines (Particularly AIDS vaccines) FACTOR VIII, Colony Stimulating factors, G-CSF (granulocyte-colony stimulating factor), EPO (Erythropoitin) PTH (Parathyroid hormone) or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or combinations thereof.

**[0174]** Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional ingredient in the composition selected from other anticonvulsants. By way of non-limiting example, such active ingredients include: paraldehyde; aromatic allylic alcohols (such as stiripentol); barbiturates (e.g. phenobarbital, primidone, methylphenobarbital, metharbital and barbexaclone); bromides (such as potassium bromide); carbamates (such as felbamate); carboxamides (such as carbamazepine and oxcarbazepine); fatty acids (such as valproic acid, sodium valproate, and divalproex sodium, vigabatrin, progabide, tiagabine); fructose, topiramate, Gaba analogs (e.g. gabapentin and pregabalin); hydantoins (e.g. ethotoin, phenytoin, mephentyoin and fosphenytoin); oxazolinediones (such as paramethadione, trimethadione, ethadione); propionates (e.g. beclamide), pyrimidinediones (e.g. primidone); pyrrolidines (e.g. brivaracetam, levetiracetam and seletracetam); succinimides (e.g. ethosuximide, phensuximide and mesuximide); sulfonamides (e.g. acetazolamide, sulthiame, methazolamide and zonisamide); triazines (such as lamotrigine); ureas (such as pheneturide, phenacemide); valproylamides (such as valpromide and valnoctamide); as well as other anticonvulsants or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or combinations thereof.

**[0175]** Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional ingredient in the composition selected from other anticonvulsants. By way of non-limiting example, such active ingredients include: antibiotics and antimicrobial agents such as tetracycline hydrochloride, leucomycin, penicillin, penicillin derivatives, erythromycin, gentamicin, sulphathiazole and nitrofurazone; local anaesthetics such as benzocaine; vasoconstrictors such as phenylephrine hydrochloride, tetrahydrozoline hydrochloride, naphazoline nitrate, oxymetazoline hydrochloride and tramazoline hydrochloride; cardiotonics such as digitalis and digoxin; vasodilators such as nitroglycerine and papaverine hydrochloride; antiseptics such as chlorhexidine hydrochloride, hexylresorcinol, dequaliniumchloride and

ethacridine; enzymes such as lysozyme chloride, dextranase; bone metabolism controlling agents such as vitamin D, active vitamin D and vitamin C; sex hormones; hypotensives; sedatives; anti-tumor agents; steroidal anti-inflammatory agents such as hydrocortisone, prednisone, fluticasone, prednisolone, triamcinolone, triamcinolone acetonide, dexamethasone, betamethasone, beclomethasone, and beclomethasone dipropionate; non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents such as acetaminophen, aspirin, aminopyrine, phenylbutazone, medanamic acid, ibuprofen, diclofenac sodium, indomethacine, colchicine, and probenocid; enzymatic anti-inflammatory agents such as chymotrypsin and bromelain seratiopeptidase; anti-histaminic agents such as diphenhydramine hydrochloride, chlorpheniramine maleate and clemastine; anti-allergic agents and antitussive-expectorant antasthmatic agents such as sodium chromoglycate, codeine phosphate, and isoproterenol hydrochloride or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or combinations thereof.

**[0176]** Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional inactive ingredient in the composition. By way of non-limiting example, minor amounts of ingredients such as stabilizers, coloring agents, pH adjusters, buffering agents, preservatives such as agents which may prevent degradation, wetting agents, and flavoring agents may also be present. Examples of coloring agents include  $\beta$ -carotene, Red No. 2 and Blue No. 1. Examples of preservatives include stearic acid, ascorbyl stearate and ascorbic acid. Examples of corrigents include menthol and citrus perfume.

**[0177]** In some embodiments, the drug delivery system of the invention may advantageously comprise an absorption enhancer. The term "enhancer", means any material which acts to increase absorption across the mucosa and/or increases bioavailability. In some embodiments, such materials include mucolytic agents, degradative enzyme inhibitors and compounds which increase permeability of the mucosal cell membranes. Whether a given compound is an "enhancer" can be determined by comparing two formulations comprising a non-associated, small polar molecule as the drug, with or without the enhancer, in an in vivo or good model test and determining whether the uptake of the drug is enhanced to a clinically significant degree. The enhancer should not produce any problems in terms of chronic toxicity because in vivo the enhancer should be non-irritant and/or rapidly metabolized to a normal cell constituent that does not have any significant irritant effect.

**[0178]** In some embodiments, preferred enhancing materials are lysophospholipids, for example

lysophosphatidylcholine obtainable from egg or soy lecithin. Other lysophosphatidylcholines that have different acyl groups as well as lyso compounds produced from phosphatidylethanolamines and phosphatidic acid which have similar membrane modifying properties may be used. Acyl carnitines (e.g. palmitoyl-dl-carnitine-chloride) is an alternative. In some embodiments, a suitable concentration is from 0.02 to 20% (w/v).

**[0179]** In some embodiments, enhancing agents that are appropriate include chelating agents (EGTA, EDTA, alginates), surface active agents (especially non-ionic materials), acyl glycerols, fatty acids and salts, tyloxapol and biological detergents listed in the SIGMA Catalog, 1988, page 316-321. Also agents that modify the membrane fluidity and permeability are appropriate such as enamines (e.g. phenylalanine enamine of ethylacetoacetate), malonates (e.g. diethyleneoxymethylene malonate), salicylates, bile salts and analogues and fusidates. Suitable concentrations are up to 20% (w/v).

[0180] In some embodiments, the invention takes advantage of delivery of a drug incorporated into or onto a bioadhesive microsphere with an added pharmaceutical adjuvant that applies to systems that contain active drug and mucolytic agent, peptidase inhibitors or non-drug polypeptide substrate singly or in combination. Suitably mucolytic agents are thiol-containing compounds such as N-acetylcysteine and derivatives thereof. Peptide inhibitors include actinonin, amastatin, bestatin, chloroacetyl-HOLeu-Ala-Gly-NH.sub.2, diprotin A and B, ebelactone A and B, E-64, leupeptin, pepstatin A, phisphoramidon, H-Thr-(tBu)-Phe-Pro-OH, aprotinin, kallikrein, chymostatin, benzamidine, chymotrypsin and trypsin. Suitable concentrations are from 0.01 to 10% (w/v). The person skilled in the art will readily be able to determine whether an enhancer should be included.

#### Administration

[0181] The administration of the composition comprises administering at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition onto at least one nasal membrane. In

some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into each nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the composition into the first nostril. Some embodiments further comprise, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the composition to the second nostril.

#### Alprazolam

[0182] The dosage of alprazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.5 to about 4, preferably about 1 to about 2 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Alprazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,987,052.

[0183] As a nasal formulation, alprazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, alprazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.



EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

40

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

### **Diazepam**

[0184] The dosage of diazepam may vary by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 20, preferably about 2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Diazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 3,371,085, 3,109,843, 3,136,815 or 3,102,116.

[0185] As a nasal formulation, diazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, diazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

### **Flurazepam**

[0186] The dosage of flurazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 5 to 40, preferably about 20 to about 35 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Flurazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,567,710 or 3,299,053.

[0187] As a nasal formulation, flurazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, flurazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

### **Lorazepam**

[0188] The dosage of Lorazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

41

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Lorazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,296,249.

**[0189]** As a nasal formulation, lorazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, lorazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Medazepam**

**[0190]** The dosage of medazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Medazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,243,427.

**[0191]** As a nasal formulation, medazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, medazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Mexazolam**

**[0192]** The dosage of mexazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Mexazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,722,371.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

42

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

**[0193]** As a nasal formulation, mexazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, mexazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Midazolam**

**[0194]** The dosage of midazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 20, preferably about 0.2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Midazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 4,280,957 or 5,831,089.

**[0195]** As a nasal formulation, midazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, midazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Temazepam**

**[0196]** The dosage of temazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 50, preferably about 5 to about 30 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Temazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,340,253 or 3,374,225.

**[0197]** As a nasal formulation, temazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, temazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered

spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

**[0198]** Those skilled in the art will be aware that a systematic, therapeutically effective amount of benzodiazepine drugs for treating seizures will vary with age, size, weight, and general physical condition of the patient as well as the severity of the disease. Frequency of administration will likewise vary with the formulation of the composition and it can be adjusted so that any suitable number of doses per day may be used.

### **Examples**

**[0199]** The invention will now be illustrated with reference to the following illustrative, non-limiting examples.

#### **Example 1**

(not according to the invention)

**[0200]** A pharmaceutical composition comprising diazepam is prepared. It is formulated as a solution to be delivered via a nasal delivery device. The composition is used to treat or prevent seizures associated with epilepsy in adults. Treatment is administered either before or after a seizure has begun. If the patient is seizing, it is administered as 1 puff from any nasal delivery device (1 puff at 5.0 mg/puff (5.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.1 mL/puff)) every 5 minutes until cessation of the seizure. However, it can be given as 1 puff per nostril in each nostril (2 puffs at 2.5 mg/puff (5.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.05 mL/puff)) every 5 minutes until cessation of the seizure. The composition according to this example is set forth in the following table.

Table 1-1 (not claimed)

5.0 mg/0.1mL	Diazepam
70.0 mg	$\alpha$ -tocopherol
0.1 mL	ethanol (qs ad to 0.1 mL)

---

**Example 2**

(not according to the invention)

[0201] A pharmaceutical composition comprising diazepam is prepared. It is formulated as a solution to be delivered via a nasal delivery device. The composition is used to treat or prevent seizures associated with epilepsy in children. Treatment is administered either before or after a seizure has begun. If the patient is seizing, it is administered as 1 puff from any nasal delivery device (1 puff at 2.0 mg/puff (2.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.1 mL/puff)). If the seizure fails to stop another dose may be administered after 5 minutes. However, it can be given as 1 puff per nostril in each nostril (2 puffs at 1.0 mg/puff (2.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.05 mL/puff)). If the seizure fails to stop another dose may be administered after 5 minutes. The composition according to this example is set forth in the following table.

Table 2-1 (not claimed)

2.0 mg/0.1mL	Diazepam
70.0 mg	$\alpha$ -tocopherol
0.1 mL	ethanol (qs ad to 0.1 mL)

**Example 3 – Formulation of Diazepam Solutions**

(not according to the invention)

[0202] In general, benzodiazepine solutions may be formulated by combining one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols and one or more lower alcohols or glycols and mixing until a homogeneous mixture is formed, adding the benzodiazepine drug to the homogeneous mixture, heating and mixing the ingredients until the benzodiazepine is fully dissolved in the homogeneous mixture, cooling the mixture, and bringing the mixture to its final mass or volume with lower alcohol or glycol.

[0203] Two different diazepam solutions were formulated by the foregoing process. Vitamin E USP and dehydrated ethanol USP were combined in the amounts set forth in the following table and mixed to form a homogeneous mixture. Diazepam in the amounts set forth in the following table was then added to the homogeneous mixture. The ingredients were heated to 40-45°C with mixing until the diazepam was fully dissolved, thereby forming a solution. The solution was cooled to 20-25°C, whereupon the solution was brought to its final target weight with dehydrated ethanol USP and the solution was mixed thoroughly to assure homogeneity. The solution was then sampled for in-process testing and packaged in 3 mL amber glass vials.

Table 3-1: Diazepam Solutions – 70 mg/mL (not claimed)

Component	Solution 00 (65% Vitamin E)	Solution 02 (80% Vitamin E)
	Concentration (mg/mL)	Concentration (mg/mL)
Diazepam USP	70.0	70.0
Vitamin E USP	650.0	800.0
Dehydrated Ethanol USP	q.s. to 1 mL	q.s. to 1 mL

**[0204]** Additional solutions of diazepam at varying concentrations are made in a similar manner, by varying the amount of diazepam and the relative amounts of Vitamin E and ethanol. Other benzodiazepine solutions are made by substituting one or more benzodiazepines for diazepam. Other ingredients, such as alkyl glycoside, can be added at a suitable step in the process (e.g. before or concurrently with the addition of benzodiazepine).

**Example 5 -- Stability of Diazepam Solutions not according to the invention**

**[0205]** Solutions 00 and 02 (Example 3) were set up on stability at 25°C / 60% RH, 30°C / 65% RH and 40°C / 75% RH. One batch each of the two different formulations, packaged in 3-ml vials with screw-top closures, along with corresponding actuators, were set up at three storage conditions. They are listed in Table 1 with their corresponding Particle Sciences initial sample control numbers.

Table 5-1: Summary of PSI sample control numbers

<b>Formulation #</b>	<b>25°C/60% RH</b>	<b>30°C/65% RH</b>	<b>40°C/75% RH</b>
Solution 00 – 70 mg/ml solution, 65% Vitamin E	083101.01	083101.02	083101.02
Solution 02 – 70 mg/ml solution, 80% vitamin E	083102.01	083102.02	083102.03

**[0206]** Summaries of the average assay values and all other results are given in Tables 5-4, 5-5,. The results for the initial, 1-month and 3-month time points are also shown for comparison. Individual spray content uniformity results are given in Tables 5-8, 5-9, 5-10, and 5-11..

**[0207]** In general, all of the assays and the other results are similar to the initial data, with the exceptions of diazepam related compounds A and B.

**[0208]** Related compound A did not meet the specification of not more than (NMT) 0.01% for some samples (see Table 2). Related compound A has increased with time and temperature.

Table 5-2: Summary of related compound A T6M results

<b>Solution/Suspension #</b>	<b>25°C/60% RH</b>	<b>30°C/65% RH</b>	<b>40°C/75% RH</b>
Solution 00	Meets specification	0.058%	0.051%
Solution 02	Meets specification	Meets specification	Meets specification

**[0209]** Related compound B is also increasing with time and temperature, and now fails specification of NMT 0.1% at 40°C condition for both suspension and one solution formulation. Only formulation 2602 meets all impurity specifications.

Table 5-3: Summary of related compound B T6M results

<b>Solution/Suspension #</b>	<b>25°C/60% RH</b>	<b>30°C/65% RH</b>	<b>40°C/75% RH</b>
Solution 00	Meets specification	Meets specification	0.398%

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

46

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Solution 02	Meets specification	Meets specification	Meets specification
-------------	---------------------	---------------------	---------------------

Table 5-4: Summary of Solution 00 results

Solution 00, 70mg/mL, 65% Vitamin E	Specifications	Initial	1	1	1	3	3	3	6	6	6
			mont h 25°C/ 60 %R H	mont h 30°C/ 65 %R H	mont h 40°C/ 75 %R H	mont h 25°C/ 60 %R H	mont h 30°C/ 65 %R H	mont h 40°C/ 75 %R H	mont h 25°C/ 60 %R H	mont h 30°C/ 65 %R H	mont h 40°C/ 75 %R H
Description	Yellow to orange solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Identification – UV	Conforms to reference std. UV and RT	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Assay Diazepam (%)	90.0 to 110.0%	100.1	100.3	93.9	98.8	96.3	96.9	101.2	97.5	94.6	100.6
Impurities (%) <sup>(1)</sup>											
Nordazepam	NMT 0.3%	0.005	0.01	0.014	0.019	0.013	0.013	0.013	0.013	0.013	0.013
Related Compound B	NMT 0.1%	ND	0.002	0.007	0.03	0.008	0.016	0.089	0.024	0.098	0.398
Related Compound A	NMT 0.01%	0.002	0.002	0.004	0.011	0.002	0.002	0.01	0.005	0.058	0.051
Unknown	NMT 0.1%	0.011	0.012	0.014	0.02	0.037	0.039	0.047	0.035	0.066	0.055
Total	NMT 1.0%	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.1	0.2	0.5
Microbial Limits	Meets USP {61}	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	pass	not tested	not tested
Fill weight (g)	report results	1.108	1.105	1.111	1.112	1.109	1.109	1.113	1.103	1.111	1.109
Fill volume (ml)	report results	1.192	1.189	1.195	1.196	1.193	1.193	1.198	1.187	1.195	1.193
Spray delivered (µl)	report results	133.9	140.7	146.8	140.5	149.1	143.5	139.6	131.4	not tested	136.4
Average Spray Content (%)	report results	95.0	101.2	100.4	99.4	99.7	94.6	99.4	95.7	not tested	108.7
Viscosity (Pa*s)	report results	0.14	0.086	0.12	0.12	0.096	0.14	0.12	0.12	0.11	0.11

<sup>(1)</sup> LOQ is approximately 0.006%, LOD is approximately 0.002%. Results below LOQ are reported in this table for trending purposes.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

47

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Table 5-5: Summary of Solution 02 results

Solution 02, 70mg/mL, 65% Vitamin E	Specifica- -tions	Initial	1	1	1	3	3	3	6	6	6
			month 25°C/ 60 %RH	month 30°C/ 65 %RH	month 40°C/ 75 %RH	month 25°C/ 60 %RH	month 30°C/ 65 %RH	month 40°C/ 75 %RH	month 25°C/ 60 %RH	month 30°C/ 65 %RH	month 40°C/ 75 %RH
Description	Yellow to orange sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n
Identification – UV	Conforms to reference std. UV and RT	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Assay Diazepam (%)	90.0 to 110.0%	100.5	94.9	96.2	103.3	98.0	97.2	99.6	97.0	94.3	100.3
Impurities (%) <sup>(1)</sup>											
Nordazepam	NMT 0.3%	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.005	0.005	0.006	0.005	0.004	0.005
Related Compound B	NMT 0.1%	ND	0.002	0.003	0.006	0.003	0.005	0.032	0.007	0.020	0.058
Related Compound A	NMT 0.01%	0.003	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.002	0.002	0.004	0.003	0.009	0.007
Unknown	NMT 0.1%	0.01	0.012	0.014	0.018	0.019	0.025	0.032	0.014	0.020	0.018
Total	NMT 1.0%	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.0	0.1	0.1
Microbial Limits	Meets USP {61}	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	pass	not tested	not tested
Fill weight (g)	report results	1.135	1.117	1.128	1.123	1.116	1.133	1.137	1.124	1.133	1.127
Fill volume (ml)	report results	1.184	1.165	1.177	1.172	1.164	1.182	1.186	1.172	1.183	1.176
Spray delivered (µl)	report results	115.0	137.5	137.6	133.1	143.9	136.3	143.8	129.3	not tested	124.2
Average Spray Content (%)	report results	98.6	97.6	97.7	100.7	98.7	94.7	100.5	95.8	not tested	97.1
Viscosity (Pa*s)	report results	0.69	0.68	0.64	0.68	0.63	0.65	0.64	0.61	0.55	0.56

(1) LOQ is approximately 0.006%, LOD is approximately 0.002%. Results below LOQ are reported in this table for trending purposes.



EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

48

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Table 5-8: Solution 00 25°C/60% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.13061	0.13259	9.59355	97.89
2	0.13217	0.13451	9.78206	99.82
3	0.12365	0.13332	8.85797	90.39
4	0.12761	0.13072	9.39720	95.89
5	0.14702	0.15216	8.91438	90.96
6	0.13414	0.13702	9.22442	94.13
7	0.12959	0.13384	9.84590	100.47
8	0.12367	0.14603	8.88093	90.62
9	0.13367	0.13425	9.92610	101.29
Average	0.13135	0.13716	9.380	95.72
St. Dev.	0.0070	0.0071	0.4309	4.3970
% RSD	5.35	5.20	4.59	4.59

Table 5-9: Solution 00 40°C/75% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.14139	0.15111	10.57237	107.88
2	0.14731	0.15146	11.62831	118.66
3	0.14489	0.14684	10.94206	111.65
4	0.14237	0.14873	11.94883	121.93
5	0.12188	0.13415	9.78103	99.81
6	0.12756	0.13047	9.78347	99.83
7	0.13549	0.13841	10.45221	106.66
8	0.12323	0.12543	9.41177	96.04
9	0.14299	0.14517	11.35701	115.89
Average	0.13635	0.14131	10.653	108.70
St. Dev.	0.0097	0.0095	0.8884	9.0649
% RSD	7.14	6.76	8.34	8.34

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

49

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Table 5-10: Solution 02 25°C/60% RH spray content uniformity results

<b>Sample</b>	<b>Weight Collected, g</b>	<b>Weight Actuated, g</b>	<b>Diazepam Recovered, mg</b>	<b>% Diazepam Recovered</b>
1	0.12280	0.12611	8.88043	90.62
2	0.13318	0.13549	9.55581	97.51
3	0.13260	0.13452	9.71837	99.17
4	0.12064	0.12305	9.48123	96.75
5	0.13215	0.13582	9.34463	95.35
6	0.13559	0.13790	9.48722	96.81
7	0.13158	0.13371	9.43613	96.29
8	0.13357	0.13495	9.79164	99.91
9	0.12165	0.12443	8.84732	90.28
Average	0.12931	0.13178	9.394	95.85
St. Dev.	0.0058	0.0056	0.3303	3.3701
% RSD	4.52	4.25	3.52	3.52

Table 5-11: Solution 02 40°C/75% RH spray content uniformity results

<b>Sample</b>	<b>Weight Collected, g</b>	<b>Weight Actuated, g</b>	<b>Diazepam Recovered, mg</b>	<b>% Diazepam Recovered</b>
1	0.12336	0.12563	9.02005	92.04
2	0.05723	0.05792	9.43076	96.23
3	0.13554	0.13908	9.93829	101.41
4	0.13619	0.13679	9.87755	100.79
5	0.13227	0.13414	9.64403	98.41
6	0.13331	0.13515	9.80808	100.08
7	0.13455	0.13844	9.31952	95.10
8	0.13314	0.13736	9.28106	94.70
9	0.13249	0.13387	9.32935	95.20
Average	0.12423	0.12649	9.517	97.11
St. Dev.	0.0254	0.0260	0.3148	3.2119
% RSD	20.45	20.57	3.31	3.31

**Example 6**

(not according to the invention)

**[0210]** All of the solutions described in Example 3 and formulated as described in Example 3, with the addition of a suitable amount of an alkyl glycoside, as described herein, such as dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or combinations of two or more thereof, or marketed as Intravail<sup>®</sup> by Aegis Therapeutics, San Diego, CA. The solutions with added alkyl glycoside may then be put up on stability as described in Example 5, *mutatis mutandis*.

**Example 7**

(not according to the invention)

**[0211]** The solutions of Examples 3 and 6 are evaluated for pharmacokinetics in a suitable animal model, such as in mice, rats, rabbits or dogs. First each animal (e.g. rabbit) is administered an amount of a benzodiazepine drug intravenously. The amount of intravenously dosed benzodiazepine drug is selected to be less, e.g. roughly half, of what is considered an effective dose administered nasally. For example, the intravenous dose of diazepam administered to rabbits is about 0.05 to about 0.2 mg/kg, e.g. about 0.1 mg/kg. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at specific time points post-administration. Plasma blood levels of the drug are assayed for each of the blood samples. After at least a one day washout period, each animal is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution as described in Examples 3 and 6. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at substantially the same specific time points as the IV dose post-administration. Pharmacokinetic curves (blood plasma concentration of drug versus time) are constructed for the intravenous route of administration and for each of the solutions administered by the intranasal administration route.

**[0212]** Toxicity is assessed by known means. In particular, histological samples are collected from the nasal mucosal tissues of the test animals. Other toxicological methods are optionally employed as well.

**Example 8**

(not according to the invention)

**[0213]** The solutions of Examples 3 and 6 are evaluated for their ability to deliver drug across the blood brain barrier in a suitable animal model, such as in mice, rats, rabbits or dogs. Each animal is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution as described in Examples 3 and 6, with the solution optionally containing an imaging agent, such as a dye, that may be used as a proxy for determining the ability of the drug to cross the blood brain barrier. The drug or imaging agent is detected at selected time points after administration of the or solution to determine how well the drug or imaging agent crosses the blood brain barrier. These results may be compared with analogous result obtained with an intravenous solution containing the drug or imaging agent.

**Example 9** (not according to the invention)

**[0214]** The above-described solutions can be evaluated for pharmacokinetics in humans. Normal, healthy human test subjects are administered an amount of the drug intravenously. The amount chosen for intravenous administration may be any amount, but is conveniently a dose that is considered effective in treating seizure in humans. For example, an IV dose of diazepam administered to humans may be in the range of 1 to 15 mg, e.g. about 7.5 mg. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at selected time points after administration. Plasma blood levels of the drug are assayed for each of the blood samples. After at least a one day washout period, each subject is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution as described herein. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at substantially the same time points after administration as the intravenous time points. Pharmacokinetic curves (blood plasma concentration of drug versus time) are constructed for the intravenous and intranasal administration routes.

#### Example 10

(not according to the invention)

**[0215]** The above-described solutions can be evaluated for efficacy in a suitable animal model. Briefly, for each dose of solution to be tested, a test animal is stimulated with a seizure inducing stimulus. The stimulus may be light, sound, chemical or other stimulus effective to induce seizure in the model animal. Once the animal has begun to seize, a solution as described herein is administered intranasally to the animal. The efficacy of the dose of the solution is evaluated based upon the animal's response to the test dose. This procedure is repeated through sufficient iterations, and at sufficient numbers of doses, to identify a dose that is considered effective to treat seizure by intranasal administration of the drug.

#### Example 11

**[0216]** A pharmaceutical composition comprising diazepam was prepared as a composition formulated as a solution to be delivered via a nasal delivery device. The solution was prepared according to the procedure outlined in the flow diagram of Figure 4. The ingredients used in the 100 mg/mL diazepam solution are set forth in Table 11-1, below:

Table 11-1

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Concentration</u> <u>(% (w/v))</u>
Diazepam	10.00 % (w/v)
$\alpha$ -tocopherol*	56.47 % (w/v)
Ethanol (dehydrated)	q.s. ((~18.07) % (w/v))
Intravail A3**	0.25 % (w/v)
Benzyl alcohol	10.50 % (w/v)

\*Vitamin E, \*\*Dodecyl maltoside

**[0217]** A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 25°C/60% R.H. for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 3 month, 6 month and 12 month time points.

**[0218]**

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

52

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	99.5	99.2	99.1

[0219] A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 30°C/65% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 1 month and 12 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	97.8	99.7

[0220] A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 40°C/75% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 3 month, 6 month and 12 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	97.9	100.0	99.4

[0221] The suspension formulation is set forth in Table 11-2 (not claimed), below

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

53

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Component	Function	Concentration (mg/mL)
Diazepam	Active	100.0
Methyl Paraben	Preservative	2.0
Propyl Paraben	Preservative	0.5
Intravail A3	Absorption aid	2.5
Vitamin E TPGS	Dispersant	10.0
Propylene Glycol	Dispersant	100.0
Povidone	Suspending agent	5.0
Water	Carrier	q.s. to 1.0 mL

[0222] A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 25°C/60% R.H. for 3 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial and 3 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	3 Month
Appearance	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid
Diazepam % Label Claim	104.4	102.1

[0223] A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 30°C/65% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 1 month. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial and 1 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month
Appearance	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid
Diazepam % Label Claim	104.4	102.9

[0224] A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 40°C/75% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 3 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 1 month and 3 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month
Appearance	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid	White liquid
Diazepam % Label Claim	104.4	102.7	108.7

[0225] A three-period, three-treatment, six-sequence, randomized cross-over study was conducted in healthy volunteers. For each dose, each volunteer was domiciled for at least 12 hours prior to each dose and until after a 24 hour pharmacokinetic sample was collected. Single doses of 100 µL of the pharmaceutical compositions described in Tables 11-1 and 11-2 were administered to each volunteer as one spray to the left nostril of 100 µL per spray. Pharmacokinetic samples were collected at 22 time points over 10 days. (PK time points: 2.5, 5, 10, 15, 20, 30 and 45 minutes, 1, 1.5, 2, 4, 12, 24, 36, 48, 72, 96, 144, 192 and 240 hours after each dose.) No

serious adverse events were noted. PK data were compared with those obtained with 5 mg of diazepam administered intravenously. The PK data are summarized in Table 11-3 and Figures 1-3.

[0226] The solution of Table 11-1 and the suspension of Table 11-2 were found to be well-tolerated with only mild adverse events reported. The solution of Table 11-1 was further found to have similar bioavailability to intravenous administration of diazepam (96% of i.v.) The intranasal formulation of Table 11-1 exhibited a  $T_{max}$  of 1.5 hours, a  $C_{max}$  of approximately 272 ng/mL. These results are comparable to those reported in the literature for commercially available diazepam gel (Diastat®).

[0227] Solutions similar to those set forth in Table 11-1 can be prepared consisting of: diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)); diazepam (9-11 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.1-0.5 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (15-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)); or diazepam (10 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.15-0.3 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (17-20 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (10-12 % (w/v)).

[0228] Solutions similar to those set forth in Table 11-1 achieve bioavailability that is from about 80-125% of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously, e.g. bioavailability that is from about 90-110% of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously or about 92.5 to 107.5% that obtained with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously. Such solutions are used in methods of treating a patient with seizure, epileptic seizure and/or breakthrough seizure. In some embodiments, solutions described herein are used to treat seizures such as is treated with Diastat® diazepam gel.

[0229] A summary of pharmacokinetic data obtained for the solution and a suspension form of diazepam is shown below in Table 11-3:

**Table 11-3**

**Summary of Pharmacokinetic Parameters for Intranasal (10 mg) and IV (5 mg) Diazepam**

Parameter <sup>a</sup>	Diazepam Nasal Spray (10 mg/100µL)				Diazepam Injection	
	NRL-1.A Suspension		NRL-1.B Solution		5 mg/mL IV	
	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>
$C_{max}$ (ng/mL)	24	221 (78.6)	24	272 (100)	24	555 (316)
$T_{max}$ (h) <sup>b</sup>	24	1.00 (0.6, 2.0)	24	1.50 (0.8, 4.0)	24	0.03 (0.03, 0.50)
$AUC_{0-1}$ (h×ng/mL)	24	5229 (1463)	24	7340 (1882)	24	3832 (1150)
$AUC_{0-∞}$ (h×ng/mL)	20	5381 (1409)	20	7338 (2072)	24	4104 (1318)
$\lambda_z$ (h <sup>-1</sup> )	20	0.0142 (0.0053)	20	0.0155 (0.0046)	24	0.0142 (0.0055)
$t_{1/2}$ (h)	20	56.2 (23.0)	20	49.2 (16.9)	24	56.2 (21.0)

a: Mean values are presented as arithmetic means.

b: Median (min, max) reported for  $T_{max}$ .

[0230] The data collected in the study are further illustrated in Figures 1-3. Figure 1 is a linear scale plot of the arithmetic mean of the plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal (IN) administration of 10 mg of

EP 12 801 372.9-1455

55

EPA-124 519

Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

02.11.2017

diazepam as the suspension of Table 11-2 and after IN administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1 compared to intravenous (IV) administration of 5 mg of diazepam. Figure 2 is a semi-logarithmic scale plot of the same data shown in Figure 1. Figure 3 shows the first 24 hours of data from Figure 1 on a linear scale.



## Main Request

### Claims

1. A pharmaceutical solution for use in a method of treating seizures by nasal administration of said pharmaceutical solution which consists of:

5 (a) a benzodiazepine drug;

(b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w);

(c) 1-25% (w/v) ethanol and 1-25% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount from 10% to 50% (w/w);

10 (d) an alkyl glycoside; and

(e) optionally at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient.

2. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, 15 halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof.

3. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 2, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of benzodiazepine. 20

4. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 3, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of diazepam.

5. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of: 25  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof.

6. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, containing 10-22.5% (w/v) ethanol and 7.5-12.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.

7. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w). 30

8. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 0.01-1% (w/v) alkyl glycoside, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol and 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol. 35

*MR, markup*

Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC  
12 801 372.9-1455

- 2 -

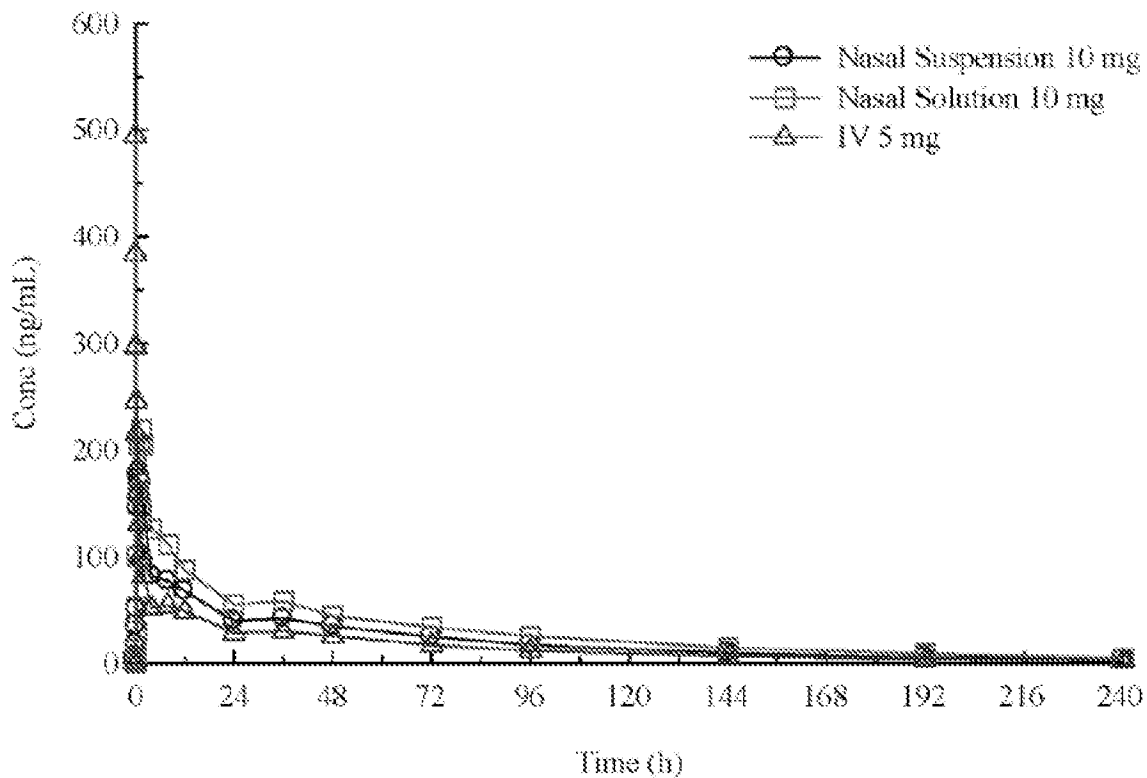
EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

9. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises at least 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside.
10. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 9, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of dodecyl maltoside.
- 5 11. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of diazepam, vitamin E, ethanol, benzyl alcohol, and dodecyl maltoside.
12. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol, 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.01%-1% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.
- 10 13. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 10% (w/v) diazepam, 56.47% (w/v) vitamin E, q.s. dehydrated ethanol, 10.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.25% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.

1/5

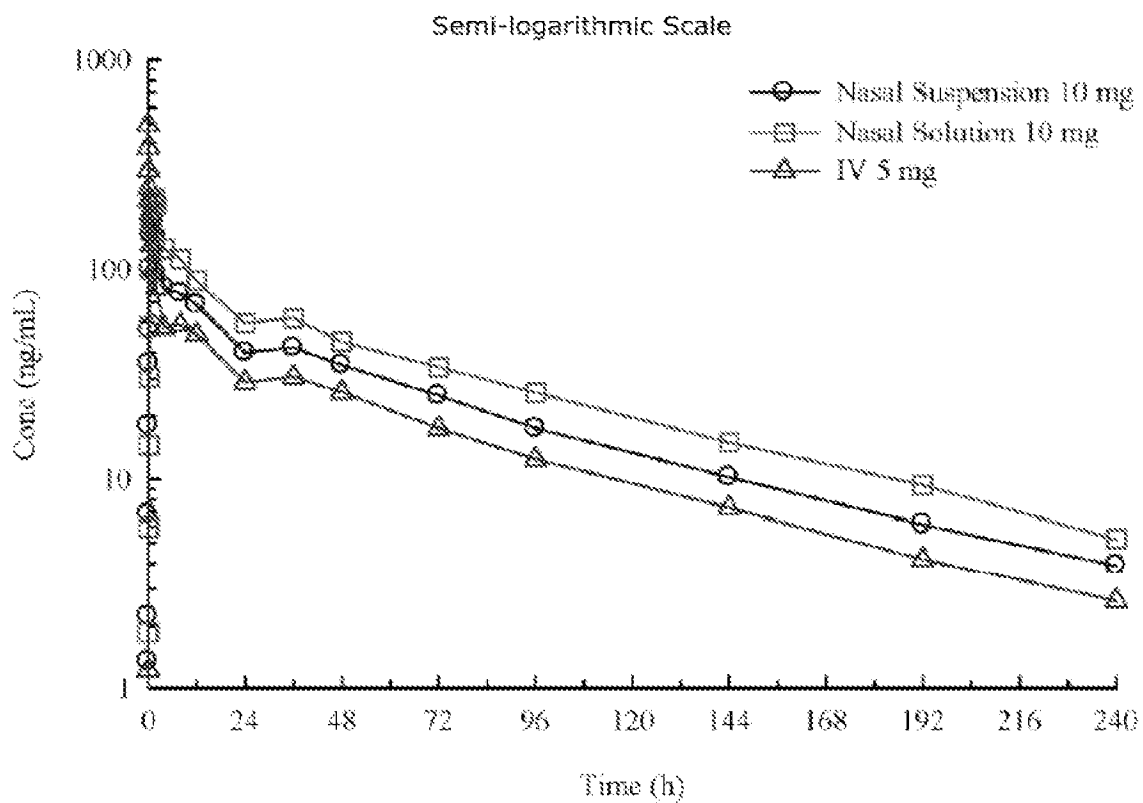
FIG. 1

Linear Scale



2/5

FIG. 2



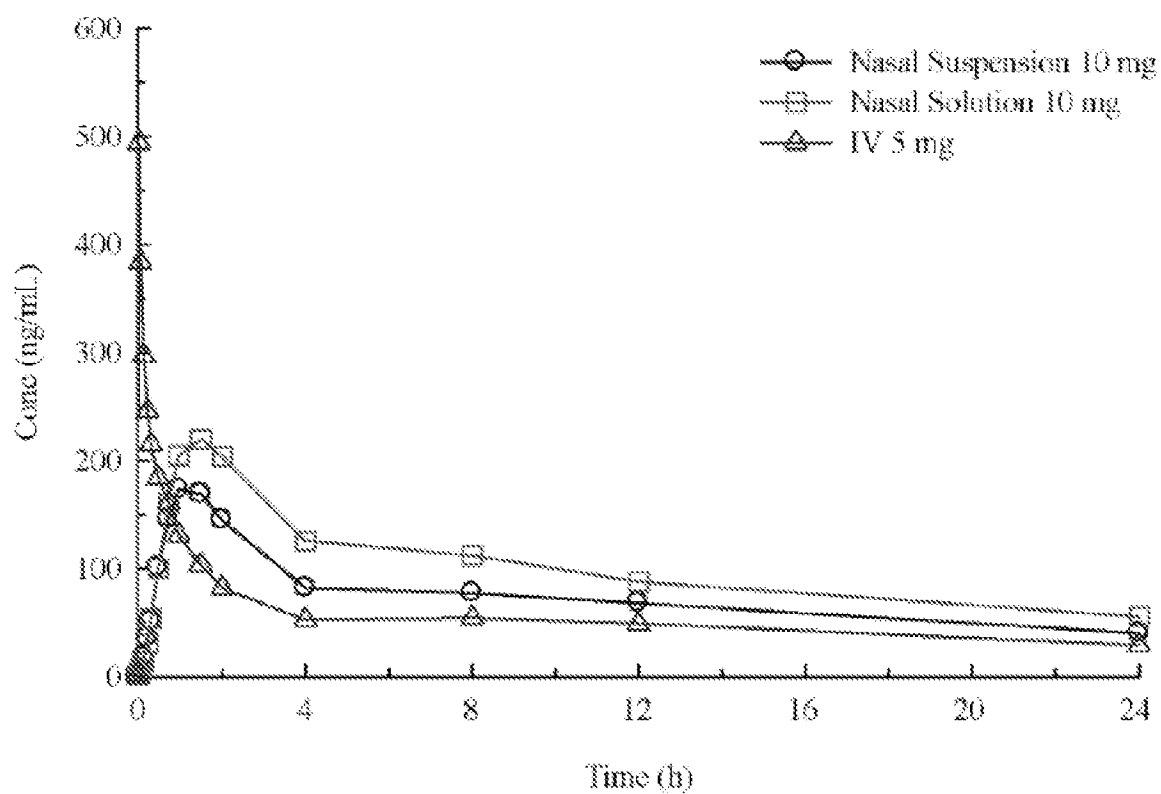
WO 2012/174158

PCT/US2012/042311

3/5

FIG. 3

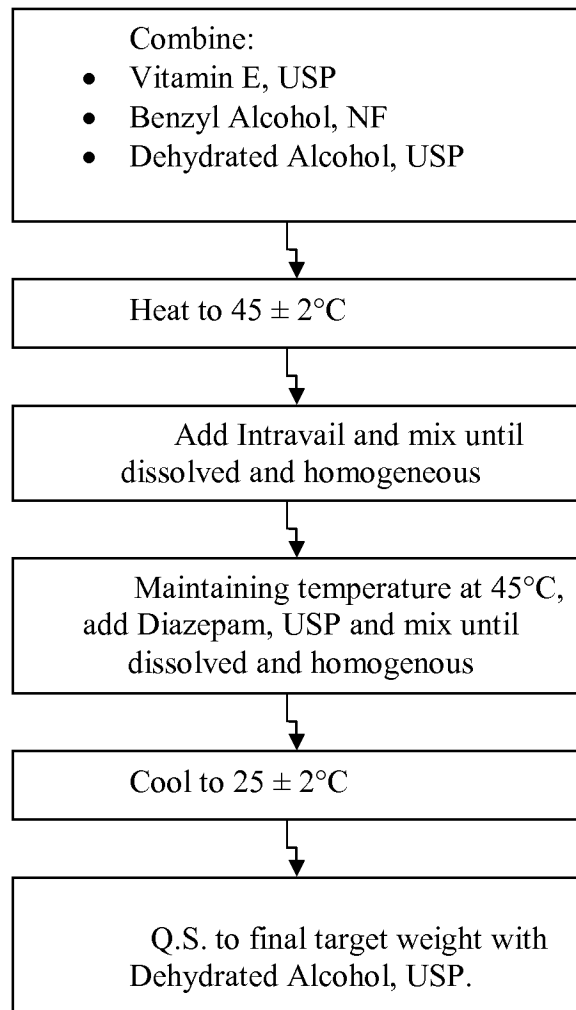
Linear Scale



WO 2012/174158

PCT/US2012/042311

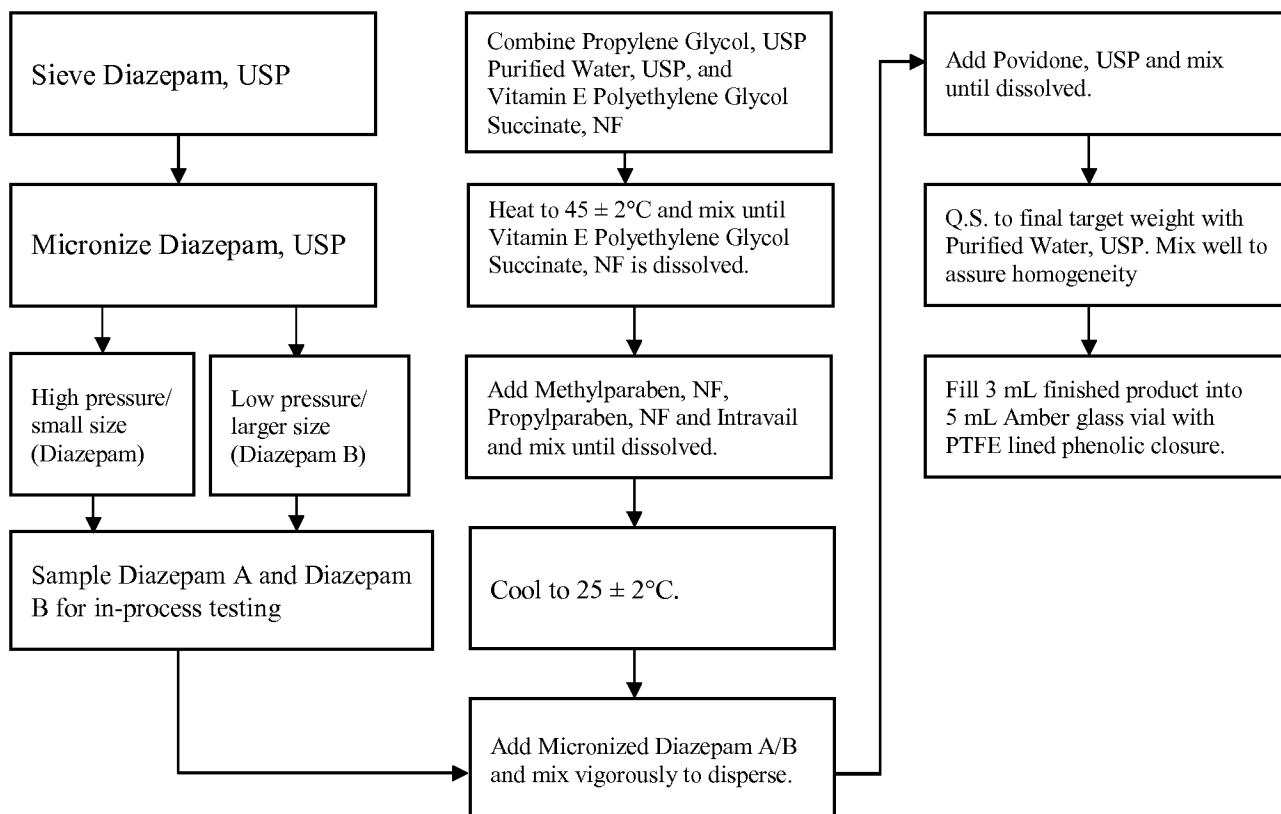
4/5

**FIG. 4: Flow Diagram for the Manufacture of Diazepam Solution**

WO 2012/174158

PCT/US2012/042311

5/5

**FIG. 5: Flow Diagram for Preparation of Diazepam Suspension****Flow Diagram for the Manufacture of NRL-1A**

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

1

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

## ADMINISTRATION OF BENZODIAZEPINE COMPOSITIONS

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

[001] This application relates to the nasal administration of benzodiazepine drugs and combinations thereof.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[002] By way of non-limiting example, the benzodiazepine family consists of drugs such as diazepam, lorazepam, and midazolam. The drugs in this family have been observed as possessing sedative, tranquilizing and muscle relaxing properties. They are frequently classified as anxiolytic and skeletal muscle relaxants. They are thought to be useful in preventing, treating, or ameliorating the symptoms of anxiety, insomnia, agitation, seizures (such as those caused by epilepsy), muscle spasms and rigidity, the symptoms of drug withdrawal associated with the continuous abuse of central nervous system depressants, and exposure to nerve agents.

[003] Benzodiazepines are thought to act by binding to the GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor of a neuron, possibly causing the receptor to change shape and making it more accessible to gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA).

[004] GABA is an inhibitory neurotransmitter that, when bound to the GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor, facilitates Cl<sup>-</sup> ions flooding into the neuron to which the receptor is bound. The increase in Cl<sup>-</sup> ions hyperpolarizes the membrane of the neuron. This completely or substantially reduces the ability of the neuron to carry an action potential. Targeting this receptor is particularly useful in treating many disorders, such as tetanus and epilepsy, which may result from too many action potentials proceeding through the nervous system.

[005] Current formulations of benzodiazepine drugs can be administered orally, rectally, or parenterally. The ability to utilize these and other types of formulations has been significantly limited due, in many cases, to solubility challenges.

[006] The oral route of administration may be considered sub-optimal due to several disadvantages. For example, the amount of time required for an orally administered benzodiazepine drug to reach therapeutically relevant concentrations in blood plasma may be rather long, such as an hour or more. Moreover, as benzodiazepine drugs pass through the liver a significant amount of the drug may be metabolized. Thus, large doses may be required to achieve therapeutic plasma levels. Furthermore, due to the nature of seizures and muscle spasms, it can be extremely difficult for either a patient or a care-giver to administer the benzodiazepine drug orally and care-givers may be reluctant to place their hands in patients' mouths.

[007] Intravenous administration perhaps provides a faster route of administration. However intravenous administration is generally limited to trained health care professionals in tightly controlled clinical settings. Additionally, sterility must be maintained. Furthermore, administering any drug intravenously can be painful and is likely impractical for patients suffering from a phobia of needles. In addition, intravenous administration of benzodiazepines is associated with respiratory depression. Thus, use of intravenous benzodiazepines is limited to professional health care environments.



[008] Rectal suppository compositions of benzodiazepine drugs can have a rapid onset of action. However, the inconvenience of rectally administered drug is an obvious impediment to their being administered by anyone outside a very small group of the patient's intimate acquaintances and the patient's professional medical care-givers.

US 2009/258865 A1 discloses intranasal compositions for the treatment of seizures, said compositions comprising (a) a benzodiazepine drug (preferably diazepam), (b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols in an amount of 30-95% (w/w) and (c) one or more alcohols or glycols in an amount of 10-70% (w/w). In some embodiments, the compositions also comprise an alkyl glycoside.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[009] The scope of the invention is defined by the claims. Any references in the description to methods of treatment refer to the compounds, pharmaceutical compositions and medicaments of the present invention for use in a method of treatment of the human (or animal) body by therapy (or for diagnosis).

The invention refers to a pharmaceutical solution for use in a method of treating seizures by nasal administration of said pharmaceutical solution which consists of: (a) a benzodiazepine drug; (b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w); (c) 1-25% (w/v) ethanol and 1-25% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount from 10% to 50% (w/w); and (d) an alkyl glycoside; and (e) optionally at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient.

[010] In some embodiments, there are provided ~~(non-aqueous)~~ pharmaceutical solutions as defined in the claims for use as defined in the claims for administration to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient. The benzodiazepine drug is dissolved in the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from ~~about~~ 30% to ~~about~~ 95% (w/w); and ethanol and benzyl alcohol ~~the one or more alcohols~~ as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, lopraxolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the solution contains ~~about~~ 1 to ~~about~~ 20 % (w/v) of benzodiazepine, e.g. ~~about~~ 1 to ~~about~~ 20 % (w/v) of diazepam. In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocopherols, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs or derivatives thereof, and any combinations thereof. The ~~thereof.~~ The solution contains ethanol (1-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (1-25 % (w/v)), or ethanol (10-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)), wherein the combined amounts are 10% to 50%. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in the pharmaceutical composition in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 200 mg/mL. In some

embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from ~~about~~ 45% to ~~about~~ 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from about 50% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the alcohols are in an amount from about 15% to 50% (w/w), e.g. about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the solution consists of diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), alkyl glycoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)). In some embodiments, the solution comprises at least ~~about~~ 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside, e.g. ~~about~~ 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of ~~an alkyl glycoside, such as~~ dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the solution consists of

diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)); more particularly the solution may consist of diazepam (9-11 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.1-0.5 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (15-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)); and even more particularly, the solution may consist of diazepam (10 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.15-0.3 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (17-20 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (10-12 % (w/v)).

[011] The pharmaceutical solution is for use in a method of ~~treating a patient with a disorder which may be treatable with a benzodiazepine drug,~~ comprising: administering to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient said pharmaceutical solution for nasal administration. ~~The benzodiazepine~~ drug is dissolved in the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from ~~about~~ 30% to ~~about~~ 95% (w/w); and ~~the alcohols~~ ethanol and benzyl alcohol as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in the pharmaceutical composition in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 200 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from ~~about~~ 45% to ~~about~~ 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from about 50% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the solution consists of diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), alkyl glycoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)). In some embodiments, the solution comprises at least ~~about~~ 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside, e.g. ~~about~~ 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of ~~an alkyl glycoside, such as~~ dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the solution consists of diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)); more particularly the solution may consist of diazepam (9-11 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.1-0.5 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (15-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)); and even more particularly, the solution may consist of diazepam (10 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.15-0.3 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (17-20 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (10-12 % (w/v)). In some embodiments, the patient is human. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is administered in a therapeutically effective amount from about 1 mg to about 20 mg. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is administered as in a dosage volume from about 10 µL to about 200 µL. In some embodiments, the administration of the pharmaceutical composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the benzodiazepine into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the pharmaceutical composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the benzodiazepine into each nostril. In some embodiments, administration of the pharmaceutical composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the pharmaceutical composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the pharmaceutical composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the pharmaceutical composition into the first nostril. In some embodiments, the method further comprises, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the pharmaceutical composition to the second nostril. In some embodiments, nasal administration of the pharmaceutical

composition begins at any time before or after onset of symptoms of a disorder which may be treatable with the pharmaceutical composition. In some embodiments, the treatment achieves bioavailability that is from about 80-125% (e.g. about 90-110%, or more particularly about 92.5-107.5%) of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously, e.g. In this context, it is intended that bioavailability be determined by a suitable pharmacodynamic method, such as comparison of area under the blood plasma concentration curve (AUC) for the nasally and intravenously administered drug. It is further understood that the percent bioavailability of the nasally administered benzodiazepine may be determined by comparing the area under the blood plasma concentration curve obtained with one dose of the benzodiazepine (e.g. 10 mg of nasal diazepam) with another dose of the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously (e.g. 5 mg of i.v. diazepam), taking into consideration the difference in dose. Thus, for the sake of illustration, a 10 mg nasal diazepam dose that achieves an AUC that is precisely half of the AUC obtained with 5 mg of i.v. diazepam would have a bioavailability of 100%. ~~2~~ ~~■~~ The ~~■~~ ~~2~~

~~In some embodiments, the~~ disorder to be treated is a seizure, such as an epileptic seizure, a breakthrough seizure, or other seizure. In some embodiments, the solution and treatment with the solution are substantially non-irritating and well-tolerated.

**[012]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is dissolved in a carrier system. In some embodiments, at least part of the benzodiazepine drug is in a form comprising benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

**[013]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than about 5000 nm. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

**[014]** In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs ~~or derivatives~~ thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, a synthetic tocopherol can include Vitamin E TPGS (Vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate). In some embodiments, on the other hand, synthetic tocopherols exclude tocopherols covalently bonded or linked (e.g. through a diacid linking group) to a glycol polymer, such as polyethylene glycol). Thus, in some embodiments, the compositions described herein exclude Vitamin E TPGS.

[015] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

[016] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from ~~about~~ 45% to ~~about~~ 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w).

[017] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises  ethanol and benzyl alcohol  ~~said alcohols or glycols~~ in an amount from about 15% to 50% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises  ethanol and benzyl alcohol  ~~said alcohols~~ in an amount from about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises  ethanol and benzyl alcohol  ~~said alcohols~~ in an amount of about 30% (w/w).

[018]  The  ~~In some embodiments, the composition comprises at least one additional ingredient selected from the group consisting of:~~ active pharmaceutical  ingredient or excipient,  ~~ingredients, and excipients, such as enhancers and agents used to adjust the pH, buffer the composition, prevent degradation, and improve appearance, odor, or taste.~~

~~[019] In some embodiments, the composition comprises one or more additional excipients, such as one or more parabens, one or more povidones, and/or one or more  povidones.  ~~alkyl glycosides.~~~~

[020] The pharmaceutical solution is for use in a method of treating  ~~seizures~~  ~~a patient with a disorder that may be treatable with a benzodiazepine drug~~ as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the patient is a human. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug includes benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

[021] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, or any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is fully dissolved in a single phase comprising one or more one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or  tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol.  ~~tocotrienols and one or more alcohols or glycols.~~ In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some such embodiments, the composition further comprises water. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than

about 5000 nm. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

[022] In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocopherols, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs or derivatives thereof, and any combinations thereof.

~~[023] In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical solution contains one or more glycols which can be selected from the group consisting of: ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, butylene glycol, pentylene glycol, any isomers thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the alcohol or glycol is free of water (dehydrated, USP). In some embodiments, the alcohol is ethanol (dehydrated, USP).~~

[024] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

[025] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from ~~about~~ 45% to ~~about~~ 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w).

[026] In some embodiments, the composition comprises at least one additional ~~ingredient selected from the group consisting of:~~ active pharmaceutical ~~ingredient or excipient.~~ ~~ingredients, enhancers, excipients, and agents used to adjust the pH, buffer the composition, prevent degradation, and improve appearance, odor, or taste.~~

[027] In some embodiments, the composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation, and further comprising administering the composition to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of the patient. In some embodiments, the therapeutically effective amount is from about 1 mg to about 20 mg of the benzodiazepine. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation having volume from about 10  $\mu$ L to 200  $\mu$ L.

[028] In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into each nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the composition into the first nostril. Some embodiments further comprise, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the composition to the second nostril.

[029] In some embodiments, the administration of the composition begins at any time before or after onset of symptoms of a disorder which may be treatable with the composition.

[030] Additional advantages of the invention will become apparent to the person skilled in the art upon consideration of the disclosure set forth herein.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[031] Some embodiments of the invention may be further appreciated upon consideration of the appended drawings, of which:

[032] Figure 1 depicts a 240 hour linear plot of the arithmetic mean plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a suspension of Table 11-2, intranasal administration 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1, and 5 mg of diazepam as an intravenous injection.

[033] Figure 2 depicts a 240 hour semi-logarithmic plot of the arithmetic mean plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a suspension of Table 11-2, intranasal administration 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1, and 5 mg of diazepam as an intravenous injection.

[034] Figure 3 depicts a 24 hour linear plot of the arithmetic mean plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a suspension of Table 11-2, intranasal administration 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1, and 5 mg of diazepam as an intravenous injection.

[035] Figure 4 is a Flow Diagram for one embodiment of a process for the manufacture of a diazepam solution according to the instant invention.

[036] Figure 5 is a Flow Diagram for one embodiment of a process for the manufacture of a diazepam suspension ~~not according~~ ~~to~~ ~~the instant invention.~~

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[037] Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions of one or more benzodiazepine drugs for use in methods as defined in the claims. Such pharmaceutical compositions are administered nasally.

[038] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than about 5000 nm. In some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof.

[039] In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs ~~or derivatives~~ thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the carrier system includes one or



more synthetic tocopherols having a polymer glycol covalently bonded or linked to a tocopherol core, such as Vitamin E TPGS, which is described in United States Patent No. 6,193,985. In particular, it has been found that in some particulate suspensions of benzodiazepines, wherein the benzodiazepine is not dissolved in a tocopherol phase, Vitamin E TPGS can be a desirable excipient for stabilizing the particulate (microparticle, nanoparticle or combination) suspension. In some embodiments, on the other hand, the carrier system specifically excludes synthetic tocopherols having a polymer glycol covalently bonded or linked to a tocopherol core, such as Vitamin E TPGS, which is described in United States Patent No. 6,193,985.

[040] ~~One alcohol is ethanol (dehydrated, USP). In some embodiments, the one or more additional glycols are selected from the group consisting of: ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, butylene glycol, pentylene glycol, any isomers thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the glycol is propylene glycol USP. In some embodiments, a synthetic tocopherol can include Vitamin E TPGS (Vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate). In some embodiments, on the other hand, synthetic tocopherols exclude tocopherols covalently bonded or linked (e.g. through a diacid linking group) to a glycol polymer, such as polyethylene glycol). Thus, in some embodiments, the compositions described herein exclude Vitamin E TPGS.~~

[041] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine is present in a carrier system in a concentration from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

[042] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from ~~about~~ 45% to ~~about~~ 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w). In some embodiments, a synthetic tocopherol can include Vitamin E TPGS (Vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate). In some embodiments, on the other hand, synthetic tocopherols exclude tocopherols covalently bonded or linked (e.g. through a diacid linking group) to a glycol polymer, such as polyethylene glycol). Thus, in some embodiments, the compositions described herein exclude Vitamin E TPGS.

[043] The carrier system comprises ~~2~~  ethanol and benzyl alcohol ~~1~~  ~~2~~ ~~said alcohols~~ in an amount from 10% to 50%, 10% to about 40%, 10% to about 35%, about 12% to 50%, about 12% to about 40%, about 12% to about 35%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to about 40%, about 15% to about 35%, 10%, about 12.5%, about 15%, about 17.5%, about 20%, about 22.5%, about 25%, about 27.5%, about 30%, about 32.5%, about 35%, about 37.5%, about 40%, about 42.5%, about 45%, about 47.5%, 50%(w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ~~2~~  ethanol and benzyl alcohol ~~1~~  ~~said~~ ~~alcohols~~ in an amount from about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises ~~2~~  ethanol and benzyl alcohol ~~1~~  ~~2~~ ~~one or more alcohols or glycols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of~~ ~~2~~  about 30% (w/w) . ~~1~~  ~~2~~ ~~about 30% (w/w). In~~ ~~some preferred embodiments, the glycols exclude glycol polymers. In some preferred embodiments, the~~

~~glycols exclude glycol polymers having an average molecular weight of greater than 200. In some embodiments, the glycols exclude polyethylene glycol having an average molecular weight of greater than about 200.~~

[044] In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises  ethanol and benzyl alcohol  ~~said alcohols~~ in an amount from about 15% to 50% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises  ethanol and benzyl alcohol  ~~said alcohols~~ in an amount from about 25% to about 40% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises  ethanol and benzyl alcohol  ~~said alcohols~~ in an amount of about 30% (w/w).

[045] In some embodiments, the composition comprises at least one additional ~~ingredient selected from the group consisting of:~~ active pharmaceutical  ingredient or excipient.  ~~ingredients, enhancers, excipients, and agents used to adjust the pH, buffer the composition, prevent degradation, and improve appearance, odor, or taste.~~

[046]  The  ~~in some embodiments, the~~ compositions comprise at least one alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the at least one alkyl glycoside is one described in United States Patent No. 5,661,130.

[047] In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol,  ethanol and benzyl alcohol.  ~~and an alcohol or glycol.~~ In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol  or tocotrienol, ethanol and benzyl alcohol,  ~~or tocotrienol and said alcohols,~~ wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, "substantially free of water" indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols  or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol,  ~~or tocotrienols, one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols  or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol,  ~~or tocotrienols, one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and optionally one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, "substantially free of water" indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols  or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol,  ~~or tocotrienols, one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols  or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol,  ~~or tocotrienols, one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims.

glycosides as defined in the claims, wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, “substantially free of water” indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.)

[048] In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol ~~2~~ or tocotrienol, and ethanol and benzyl alcohol ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~or tocotrienol, and an alcohol or glycol~~ as defined in the claims. Thus, in some embodiments, the composition is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition comprises a benzodiazepine

drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent comprising a natural or synthetic tocopherol ~~2~~ or tocotrienol, and ethanol and benzyl alcohol ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~or tocotrienol and an alcohol or glycol~~ as defined in the claims, wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, "substantially free of water" indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols ~~2~~ or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~or tocotrienols, one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug that is fully dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols ~~2~~ or tocotrienols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~or tocotrienols, one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, "substantially free of water" indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.) In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic ~~2~~ tocopherols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~tocopherols, one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims. In some embodiments, the composition consists of a benzodiazepine dissolved in a solvent consisting of one or more natural or synthetic ~~2~~ tocopherols, ethanol and benzyl alcohol, ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~tocopherols,~~ ~~one or more alcohols or glycols,~~ and one or more alkyl glycosides as defined in the claims, wherein the solution is at least substantially free of water. (In some embodiments, "substantially free of water" indicates that the solution contains less than about 1%, less than about 0.5%, less than about 0.25% or less than about 0.1% water.)

[049] ~~2~~ The following disclosed compositions do not form part of the invention: Disclosed ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~Disclosed~~ is a composition which contains a benzodiazepine drug ~~2~~ ~~1~~ that is at ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~that at~~ least partially in a particulate form suspended in a carrier system containing a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol and one or more alcohols or glycols. Disclosed is that substantially all the benzodiazepine drug is in a particulate form. Disclosed is that at least part of the benzodiazepine drug is in a microparticulate or nanoparticulate form. The carrier system is one in which the amount of at least one benzodiazepine present in the composition exceeds its solubility in the carrier system. A carrier system in such a composition can include water. Such a liquid carrier system can contain water and one or more excipients. One or more excipients can be dissolved or suspended in the carrier system. The composition can ~~2~~ ~~1~~ ~~comprise~~ ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~comprises~~ a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system comprising synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, one or more surfactants and water. The composition can ~~2~~ ~~1~~ ~~consist~~ ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~consists~~ essentially of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting essentially of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, one or more surfactants and water. The

composition can consist of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, one or more surfactants and water. Disclosed is a composition which contains a benzodiazepine drug ~~that is~~ that is at least partially in a particulate form suspended in a carrier system containing a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, one or more alcohols or glycols, and an alkyl glycoside.

Substantially all the benzodiazepine drug can be in a particulate form. At least part of the benzodiazepine drug is in a microparticulate or nanoparticulate form. The carrier system is one in which the amount of at least one benzodiazepine present in the composition exceeds its solubility in the carrier system. A carrier system in such a composition can include water. Such a liquid carrier system can contain water and one or more excipients. One or more excipients can be dissolved or suspended in the carrier system. At least one such excipient can stabilize the suspension of benzodiazepine particulates in the carrier system. Benzodiazepine particulate suspensions can specifically exclude one or more polymeric glycols, such as polyethylene glycol. Benzodiazepine particulate suspensions can specifically exclude one or more polymeric glycols having a molecular weight greater than about 200 g/mol. The composition can comprise a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system comprising a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, an alkylglycoside and water. The composition consists essentially of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting essentially of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, an alkyl glycoside, optionally a surfactant, and water. The composition can consist of a benzodiazepine drug in a form including benzodiazepine microparticles and/or nanoparticles suspended in a carrier system consisting of a synthetic tocopherol, one or more parabens, one or more alcohols or glycols, an alkyl glycoside, optionally one or more surfactants, and water.

[050] ~~The invention also discloses a method of treating~~ a patient with a disorder that may be treatable with a benzodiazepine drug. In some embodiments, the patient is a human. In some embodiments, the use ~~method~~ comprises: administering to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient a pharmaceutical composition for nasal administration as disclosed above. ~~administration as defined in the claims.~~

[051] In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, or any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is diazepam, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug comprises benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles, or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine nanoparticles have an effective average particle size of less than about 5000 nm.

[052] In some embodiments, the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs or derivatives thereof, and any combinations thereof. A synthetic tocopherol may include a tocopherol that has been modified to include a hydrophilic group, such as a polyethylene glycol group, which may be directly covalently bonded to the tocopherol or may be linked to the tocopherol through a covalent linking group, such as a diacid. An exemplary synthetic tocopherol of this type is Vitamin E Polyethylene Glycol Succinate

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

12

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

(Vitamin E TPGS), although the person skilled in the art will be able to envision other synthetic tocopherols that have similar diacid and/or hydrophilic groups.

**[053]** In some embodiments, one or more glycols are present as excipients and are selected from the group consisting of: ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, butylene glycol, pentylene glycol, any isomers thereof, and any combinations thereof. In some embodiments, one or more glycols specifically excludes polymeric glycols, such as polyethylene glycol. In some embodiments, one or more glycols specifically excludes a polymeric glycol having a molecular weight of greater than about 200 g/mol.

**[054]** In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration from about 1 mg/mL to about 600 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 10 mg/mL to about 250 mg/mL. In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is present in the carrier system in a concentration of from about 20 mg/mL to about 50 mg/mL.

**[055]** In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 45% to about 85% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from about 60% to about 75% (w/w). In some embodiments, the carrier system comprises one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount of about 70% (w/w). In some embodiments, especially where particulate suspensions of a benzodiazepine drug are contemplated, the compositions may include a tocopherol, especially a synthetic tocopherol having a hydrophilic group covalently linked to a tocopherol. In other embodiments, especially where a solution of benzodiazepine drug is contemplated, the tocopherol is substantially or completely free of Vitamin E TPGS.

**[056]** In some embodiments, the composition comprises at least one additional ingredient selected from the group consisting of: active pharmaceutical ingredients; enhancers; excipients; and agents used to adjust the pH, buffer the composition, prevent degradation, and improve appearance, odor, or taste.

**[057]** In some embodiments, a composition comprises at least one penetration enhancer in addition to a benzodiazepine drug, a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, and an alcohol or glycol. In some embodiments, the penetration enhancer is an alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside refers to any sugar joined to any hydrophobic alkyl, as described in United States patent number 5,661,130. The hydrophobic alkyl can be any suitable length, for example about 9 to about 24 carbons in length, especially about 10 to about 14 carbons in length. The hydrophobic alkyl can be branched and/or partially or wholly unsaturated. The alkyl may be joined to the saccharide core for example through a carbonyl group, whereby an ester group may be formed. A suitable alkyl glycoside will have the characteristics of being nontoxic, nonionic, and capable of increasing the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug when it is administered intranasally as described herein. Exemplary saccharides that may be covalently joined to an alkyl according to the present invention include glucose, maltose, maltotriose, maltotetrose, sucrose and trehalose. Exemplary alkyl glycosides that may be employed include octyl-, nonyl-, decyl-, undecyl-, dodecyl, tridecyl, tetradecyl,

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

13

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

pentadecyl, octadecyl  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -D-maltoside, -glucoside or sucroside. In some embodiments, the preferred glycosides include maltose, sucrose or glucose linked by glycosidic linkage to an alkyl chain of 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18 or 20 carbon atoms. Where present, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is sufficient to enhance the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug administered by the intranasal route. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is selected so as to enhance absorption of the benzodiazepine drug, while at the same time not significantly irritating the nasal mucosa. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.01% (w/v) to about 1% (w/v). In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.05% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v), or about 0.125% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v).

**[058]** In some embodiments, the composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation, and further comprising administering the composition to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of the patient. In some embodiments, the therapeutically effective amount is from about 1 mg to about 20 mg of the benzodiazepine. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition is in a pharmaceutically-acceptable spray formulation having volume from about 10  $\mu$ L to 200  $\mu$ L.

**[059]** In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into each nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the composition into the first nostril. Some embodiments further comprise, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the composition to the second nostril.

**[060]** In some embodiments, the administration of the composition begins at any time before or after onset of symptoms of a disorder which may be treatable with the composition.

## Definitions

**[061]** As used herein the phrase “therapeutically effective amount” (or more simply “effective amount”) includes an amount sufficient to provide a specific therapeutic response for which the drug is administered to a patient in need of particular treatment. The skilled clinician will recognize that the therapeutically effective amount of drug will depend upon the patient, the indication and the particular drug administered.

**[062]** As used herein, the modifier “about” is intended to have its regularly recognized meaning of approximately. In some embodiments, the term may be more precisely interpreted as meaning within a particular percentage of the modified value, e.g. “about” may in some embodiments mean  $\pm 20\%$ ,  $\pm 10\%$ ,  $\pm 5\%$ ,  $\pm 2\%$ , or  $\pm 1\%$  or less.

**[063]** As used herein, the phrase “analogs or derivatives” includes molecules that differ from one another molecule due to one or more atoms or functional groups having been replaced with a different atom or



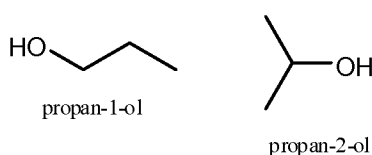
EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

14

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

functional group. This may result in molecules with similar chemical formulas but different chemical and/or biological properties.

[064] As used herein, the term, “isomer” includes molecules with identical chemical formulas, but between which the arrangement of the molecules may vary. These varying arrangements may result in molecules with identical chemical formulas but different chemical properties. By way of non-limiting example, propanol has the chemical formula  $C_3H_7OH$ . It may be found as propan-1-ol, wherein the  $-OH$  is found attached to an end carbon. Alternatively, it may be found as propan-2-ol, wherein the  $-OH$  is found attached to the second carbon.



[065] As used herein, the term “seizure” includes commonly recognized types of seizures, including absence seizures, myoclonic seizures, clonic seizures, tonic seizures, tonic-clonic seizures, and atonic seizures. Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. Each patient will generally experience a different type of aura, which is unique to the patient; however auras may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or at least often, precedes a patient’s experiencing a seizure. (Not all patients who suffer seizures experience aura; however aura are not uncommon amongst those who suffer the worst type of seizures, especially tonic-clonic seizures.)

[066] As used herein, the term “prevention” refers to a forestalling, including temporary forestalling, of the onset of a disorder. In the case of seizures, this can occur either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[067] As used herein, the term “treatment” refers to a reduction in the intensity and/or duration of a disorder, or similar effects. The term also encompasses the side-effects of such a “treatment.”

[068] As used herein, unless otherwise qualified, “a” and “an” can mean one or more.

[069] As used herein, the term “comprising” in all its variants, is a transitional phrase used in a claim to indicate that the invention includes or contains, but is not limited to, the specifically recited claim elements.

[070] As used herein, the phrase “consisting essentially of” is a transitional phrase used in a claim to indicate that the a following list of ingredients, parts or process steps must be present in the claimed composition, machine or process, but that the claim is open to unlisted ingredients, parts or process steps that do not materially affect the basic and novel properties of the invention.

[071] As used herein, the term “consisting of” is a transitional phrase used in a claim to indicate that the claimed invention includes only those elements set forth in the claim.

### **Benzodiazepine Drugs**

[072] In the context of the present invention, the term “benzodiazepine drug” includes any therapeutically effective benzodiazepine compound, or pharmaceutically acceptable salt, or combinations thereof. In some

embodiments, benzodiazepine comprises a member of the group consisting of alprazolam, diazepam, flurazepam, lorazepam, medazepam, mexazolam, midazolam, temazepam and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and combinations thereof.

[073] It should be recognized by those of skill in the art that additional benzodiazepine compounds that have heretofore been considered to have marginal or little therapeutic benefit, either because of low bioavailability, poor pharmacokinetic properties or poor pharmacodynamic properties, may find use through the present invention, which can provide for improved bioavailability of benzodiazepine drugs, delivery of higher concentrations of benzodiazepine drugs via the nasal route, faster attainment of therapeutic levels of benzodiazepine in the blood plasma, avoidance of the liver portal vein and concomitant avoidance of first pass effects and/or faster presentation of benzodiazepine drug to the brain.

[074] For example, most benzodiazepines are so slightly soluble in water that a therapeutically effective amount cannot be dissolved in a volume of aqueous solvent that is amenable to application to a mucosal membrane. By use of the present carrier system, which in some embodiments, provides an improved ability to dissolve benzodiazepine drugs, the present invention allows benzodiazepine drugs to be administered to ~~one or more mucosal membranes, including to~~ nasal mucosal membranes. This can allow one to administer the drug without hospitalization or unnecessary discomfort. Additionally, ~~in some embodiments of the present~~

~~invention, such as~~ nasal administration, the digestive system largely may be bypassed. This latter improvement can yield improved bioavailability, faster attainment of therapeutic levels of benzodiazepine in the blood plasma, avoidance of the liver portal vein, and/or concomitant avoidance of first pass effects.

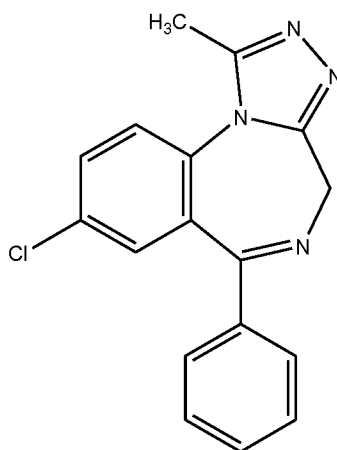
[075] Nasal administration of the composition can result in faster presentation of the one or more benzodiazepine drugs to the brain due to the close proximity of the membranes and the brain. A seizing patient, for example, suffers from rigid muscles and uncontrollable movement. This can make oral and/or intravenous administration difficult or inconvenient. However, the nasal passageways remain open and easily accessible, and therefore is a useful route of administration ~~for of the~~ present invention.

[076] ~~The~~ The ~~pharmaceutical composition is used as defined in the claims to~~ ~~treat seizures.~~ ~~treat a~~

~~patient suffering from a disorder that is amenable to treatment or prevention with an effective amount of the one or more benzodiazepine drugs. By way of non-limiting example such disorders can include: insomnia, anxiety, seizures, muscle spasms and rigidity, and the symptoms of drug withdrawal.~~

[077] In some embodiments, the one or more benzodiazepine drugs, are used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure.

[078] **Alprazolam** (8-chloro-6-phenyl-1-methyl-4H-1,2,4-triazolo[4,3-a][1,4]benzodiazepine).



[079] Alprazolam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Alprazolam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of panic disorder. The dosage of alprazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.5 to about 4, preferably about 1 to about 2 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Alprazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,987,052.

[080] In some embodiments, alprazolam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

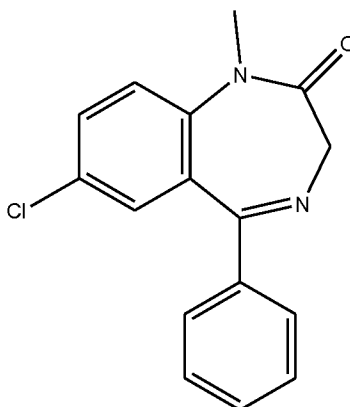
[081] In some embodiments, alprazolam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Alprazolam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of alprazolam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of alprazolam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or *status epilepticus*, administration of alprazolam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with alprazolam to provide an anticonvulsant or synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[082] Alprazolam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure ~~victim~~ ~~victim, for example,~~ nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute ~~nasal dosing~~ ~~dosing~~ of benzodiazepine ~~anticonvulsants, such as nasal dosing, are.~~ anticonvulsants are: reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the

patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the alprazolam ~~nasal formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations,~~ provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The alprazolam ~~nasal formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations,~~ also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[083] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[084] **Diazepam** (7-chloro-1-methyl-5-phenyl-1,3-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)



[085] Diazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic and skeletal muscle relaxant. It possesses anxiolytic, anticonvulsant, sedative, skeletal muscle relaxant and amnesic properties. The dosage of diazepam may vary by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 20, preferably about 2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Diazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 3,371,085; 3,109,843; 3,136,815 or 3,102,116.

[086] In some embodiments, diazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

[087] In some embodiments, diazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Diazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of diazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of diazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of diazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with diazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[088] Diazepam may also be administered by another person (*e.g.* an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure ~~victim~~ ~~nasally~~. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute ~~nasal~~ dosing of benzodiazepine ~~anticonvulsants~~ are: ~~anticonvulsants, such as nasal dosing, etc.~~ reduction in the severity of the seizure (*e.g.* general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the diazepam ~~nasal~~ formulations of the ~~invention~~ ~~invention, and in particular nasal formulations,~~ provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The diazepam ~~nasal~~ formulations of the ~~invention~~ ~~invention, and in particular nasal formulations,~~ also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

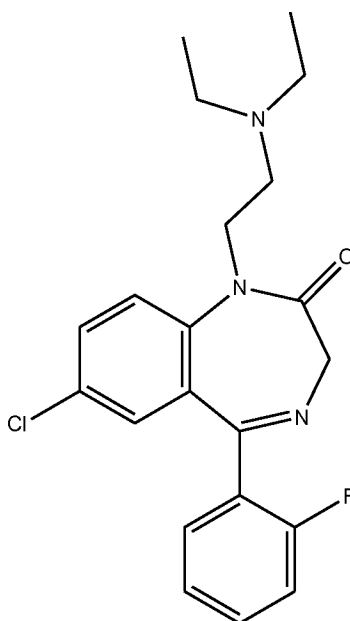
[089] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[090] **Flurazepam** (7-chloro-5-(2-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-(2-(diethylamino)ethyl)-1H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

19

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017



**[091]** Flurazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative (especially soporific and hypnotic), anxiolytic, anticonvulsant and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an sedative, hypnotic. Flurazepam has been shown to be useful in the treatment of insomnia. The dosage of flurazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 5 to 40, preferably about 20 to about 35 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Flurazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,567,710 or 3,299,053.

**[092]** In some embodiments, flurazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

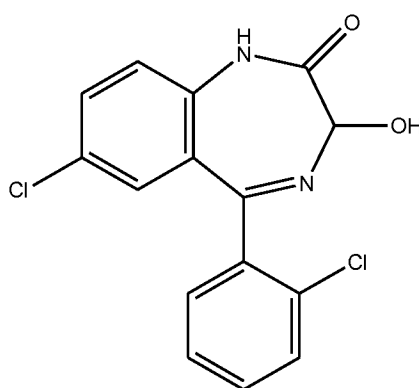
**[093]** In some embodiments, flurazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Flurazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of flurazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of flurazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of flurazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with flurazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

**[094]** Flurazepam may also be administered by another person (*e.g.* an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in

an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure ~~victim, for example,~~ nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are: ~~anticonvulsants, such as nasal dosing, etc.~~ reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the flurazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The flurazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[095] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[096] **Lorazepam** (7-chloro-5-(2-chlorophenyl)-3-hydroxy-1,3-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)



[097] Lorazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Lorazepam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of nausea. The dosage of lorazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Lorazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,296,249.

[098] In some embodiments, lorazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

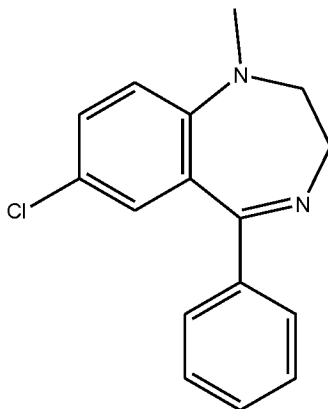
[099] In some embodiments, lorazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Lorazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of lorazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of lorazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of lorazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with lorazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[0100] Lorazepam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure

~~victim, for example,~~ nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are: ~~anticonvulsants, such as nasal dosing, etc.~~ reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the lorazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The lorazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[0101] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.



**[0102] Medazepam** ((7-chloro-1-methyl-5-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1,4-benzodiazepine)

**[0103]** Medazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Medazepam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of nausea. The dosage of medazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Medazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,243,427.

**[0104]** In some embodiments, medazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

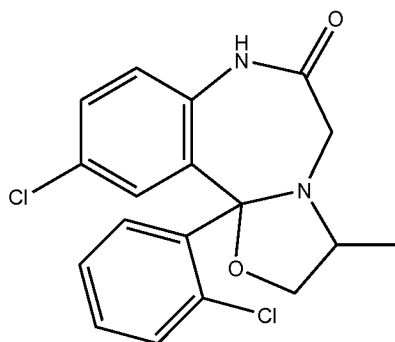
**[0105]** In some embodiments, medazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Medazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of medazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of medazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of medazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with medazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

**[0106]** Medazepam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure ~~victim~~ ~~victim, for example,~~ nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute ~~nasal~~ ~~nasal~~ dosing of benzodiazepine ~~anticonvulsants~~ are: ~~anticonvulsants, such as nasal~~ dosing, are. reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the

patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the medazepam ~~nasal formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations,~~ provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The medazepam ~~nasal formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations,~~ also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[0107] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[0108] **Mexazolam** (10-Chloro-11b-(2-chlorophenyl)-1,3,7,11b-tetrahydro-3-methyloxazolo[3,2-d][1,4]benzodiazepin-6(5H)-one)



[0109] Mexazolam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Mexazolam has also been shown to be useful in the treatment of nausea. The dosage of mexazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Mexazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,722,371.

[0110] In some embodiments, mexazolam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

[0111] In some embodiments, mexazolam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Mexazolam may be administered

by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of mexazolam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of mexazolam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of mexazolam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with mexazolam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[0112] Mexazolam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure ~~victim, for example,~~ nasally. Among the beneficial

therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are: reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the mexazolam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The mexazolam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

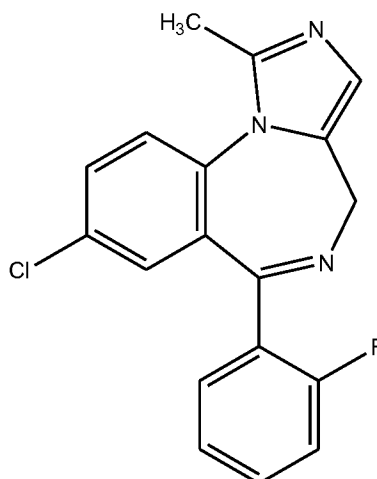
[0113] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[0114] **Midazolam** (8-chloro-6-(2-fluorophenyl)-1-methyl-4H-imidazo(1,5-a)benzodiazepine).

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

25

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017



**[0115]** Midazolam is a tricyclic benzodiazepine having anxiolytic, amnesic, hypnotic, anticonvulsant, skeletal muscle relaxant and sedative properties. Midazolam is considered soluble in water at a pH lower than about 4, but is relatively insoluble in most aqueous solutions at neutral pH (e.g. about 6 to 8). Thus it is desirable in some embodiments for aqueous nasal preparations of midazolam to have a pH above about 5.5, preferably above about 6.0, or above about 6.5. In some preferred embodiments, the pH is between about 6 and 9, between about 6 and 8. It is considered that preparations of midazolam are particularly suitable for nasal administration as the lipid-soluble (at approximately neutral pH) midazolam is rapidly absorbed across nasal mucosa, leading to efficient uptake of midazolam. It is further considered that midazolam may be formulated in a non-aqueous delivery vehicle, such as is known in the aerosol administration art, such as hydrofluorocarbon propellants, hydrocarbon propellants, etc.

**[0116]** The dosage of midazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 20, preferably about 0.2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Midazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 4,280,957 or 5,831,089.

**[0117]** In some embodiments, midazolam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

**[0118]** In some embodiments, midazolam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Midazolam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of midazolam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of midazolam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of midazolam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In

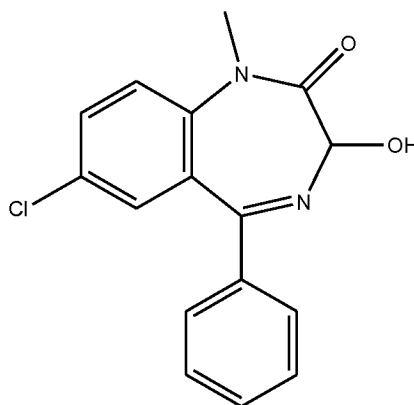
addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with midazolam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[0119] Midazolam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure

~~victim, for example,~~ nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are: reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the midazolam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The midazolam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[0120] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

[0121] **Temazepam** (7-chloro-1-methyl-5-phenyl-3-hydroxy-1,3-dihydro-2H-1,4-benzodiazepin-2-one)



[0122] Temazepam is a benzodiazepine drug having sedative, tranquilizing, anticonvulsant, amnesic and muscle relaxing properties. It is classified as an anxiolytic. Temazepam has also been shown to be useful in

the treatment of nausea. The dosage of temazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 50, preferably about 5 to about 30 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Temazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,340,253 or 3,374,225.

[0123] In some embodiments, temazepam is used alone or in combination with other drugs to provide an anxiolytic effect, an anticonvulsant effect, a sedative effect, a skeletal muscle relaxant effect, an amnesic effect or combinations of the foregoing effects.

[0124] In some embodiments, temazepam is used alone or in combination with another anticonvulsant drug to treat seizure, protect against seizure, reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure, reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure, and/or prevent occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. Temazepam may be administered by the patient or other person (such as a healthcare professional) while the patient is in a non-seizing state to protect against seizure. Even where protection against seizure is not absolute, administration of temazepam may reduce or ameliorate the intensity of seizure and/or reduce or ameliorate the frequency of seizure. In some embodiments, administration of temazepam may prevent occurrence of seizure. In some embodiments, especially where the patient is prone to experiencing serial seizures or status epilepticus, administration of temazepam may aid in interrupting the seizure cycle and may thus prevent the re-occurrence of seizure. In addition to the benzodiazepines (such as diazepam), other anti-convulsant drugs may be combined with temazepam to provide a synergistic anticonvulsant effect.

[0125] Temazepam may also be administered by another person (e.g. an acquaintance or associate, a family member or a health care professional) to the patient while the patient is in a state of seizure. Thus, one of the advantages of the formulations for use according to the present invention is the ability to administer them in an acute therapeutic environment to treat the seizure

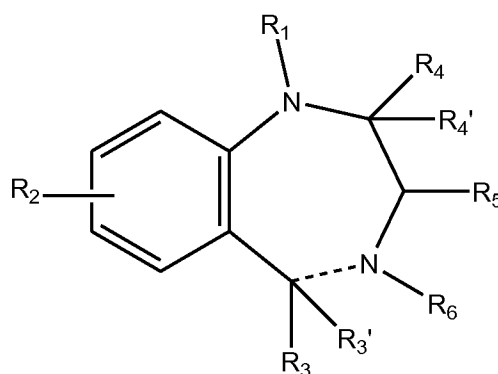
~~victim, for example,~~ nasally. Among the beneficial therapeutic effects that may be imparted by acute dosing of benzodiazepine anticonvulsants are: ~~anticonvulsants, such as nasal dosing, are.~~ reduction in the severity of the seizure (e.g. general relaxation of the muscles, reduction in seizure-induced anxiety experienced by the patient and a general impartation of a feeling of well-being to the patient), reduction in the duration of the seizure, reduction in the probability that the patient will experience a repeat seizure, an increase in the interval between the current seizure and the next seizure. Thus, the temazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, provide fast onset of therapeutic benefit – in some instances less than about 30 minutes, less than about 15 minutes, less than about 10 minutes, and in some cases less than about 5 minutes. The temazepam formulations of the invention, and in particular nasal formulations, also provide convenient administration of a therapeutically beneficial drug to a patient that does not require intravenous drug administration or rectal drug administration.

[0126] Often seizures, particularly severe tonic or tonic-clonic seizures, will be presaged by one or more aura events that will be familiar to the patient or those familiar with the patient. These auras are practically *sui generis* for each patient, but may be classified as audible, visual, olfactory or tactile sensations that usually, or typically, precedes a patient's experiencing a seizure. In some embodiments of the invention, the method includes prompt administration of a preparation of a benzodiazepine drug according to the invention during

the aura. In some embodiments, such intra-aural administration of benzodiazepine drug, ~~for example~~ by nasal administration, will prevent or at least ameliorate the effects (intensity, duration or both) of the impending seizure. Thus, in the context of this invention, prevention of seizure refers to a temporary forestalling of the onset of seizure, either with or without the benefit of a warning aura.

### Pharmaceutically Acceptable Salts

[0127] Benzodiazepines have the generally basic structure of formula I:



**Formula I**

wherein  $R_1$ - $R_5$  are substituents. In particular embodiments,  $R_1$  is an optionally substituted alkyl or forms a ring with  $R_4$ ,  $R_2$  is a halogen (e.g. Cl, Br),  $R_3$  is optionally substituted aryl (e.g. 2-Chloro or 2-Fluorophenyl),  $R_5$  is H or OH,  $R_4$  and  $R_4'$  together form a carbonyl ( $C=O$ ) with the carbon to which they are attached or  $R_4$  and  $R_1$  form an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring with the diazepam ring atoms to which they are respectively attached;  $R_3'$  and  $R_6$  together form a double bond or may be combined to form an optionally substituted heterocyclic ring along with the diazepam ring atoms to which they are respectively attached. Such basic compounds may form acid addition salts with pharmaceutically acceptable acids, such as pharmaceutically acceptable mineral acids and pharmaceutically acceptable organic acids.

[0128] Pharmaceutically acceptable mineral acids include HCl,  $H_2SO_4$ ,  $H_2SO_3$ ,  $H_3PO_4$ ,  $H_3PO_3$ , and others that will be recognized by those of skill in the art. Pharmaceutically acceptable organic acids include acetic acid, benzoic acid, tartaric acid, citric acid, oxalic acid, maleic acid, malonic acid, etc. Thus, in some embodiments, the pharmaceutically acceptable acid may be selected from the group consisting of: 1-hydroxy-2-naphthoic acid, 2,2-dichloroacetic acid, 2-hydroxyethanesulfonic acid, 2-oxoglutaric acid, 4-acetamidobenzoic acid, 4-aminosalicylic acid, acetic acid, adipic acid, ascorbic acid (L), aspartic acid (L), benzenesulfonic acid, benzoic acid, camphoric acid (+), camphor-10-sulfonic acid (+), capric acid (decanoic acid), caproic acid (hexanoic acid), caprylic acid (octanoic acid), carbonic acid, cinnamic acid, citric acid, cyclamic acid, dodecylsulfuric acid, ethane-1,2-disulfonic acid, ethanesulfonic acid, formic acid, fumaric acid, galactaric acid, gentisic acid, glucoheptonic acid (D), gluconic acid (D), glucuronic acid (D), glutamic acid,

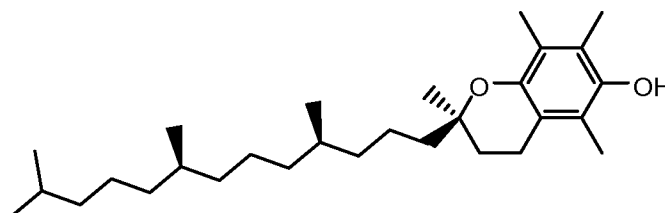
glutaric acid, glycerophosphoric acid, glycolic acid, hippuric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydrochloric acid, isobutyric acid, lactic acid (DL), lactobionic acid, lauric acid, maleic acid, malic acid (- L), malonic acid, mandelic acid (DL), methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid (besylic acid), naphthalene-1,5-disulfonic acid, naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid, nicotinic acid, nitric acid, oleic acid, oxalic acid, palmitic acid, pamoic acid, phosphoric acid, propionic acid, pyroglutamic acid (- L), salicylic acid, sebacic acid, stearic acid, succinic acid, sulfuric acid, tartaric acid (+ L), thiocyanic acid, toluenesulfonic acid (p) and undecylenic acid. Other pharmaceutically acceptable acids may be pharmaceutically acceptable acidic (anionic) polymers or pharmaceutically acceptable amphoteric polymers. One skilled in the art will recognize that other basic active pharmaceutical ingredients may be combined with the foregoing acids to produce acid addition salts. Likewise the person skilled in the art will recognize that in some embodiments it may be advantageous that some or all of the added acid be an active pharmaceutical ingredient in its own right.

**[0129]** In some embodiments, the invention provides nasal compositions comprising one or more acidic pharmaceutically active ingredients. It is considered well within the ordinary skill in the art to determine which of the compounds set for the above are acidic. Such compounds may be prepared as base addition salts, e.g. by the addition of one or more mineral bases (e.g. NaOH, KOH, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, NH<sub>3</sub>) or organic bases. It is considered within the skill in the art to choose a pharmaceutically acceptable base.

**[0130]** Known benzodiazepine compounds have anxiolytic, anticonvulsant, sedative and/or skeletal muscle relaxant effect. The term “anticonvulsant” includes treatment of seizures, protection against seizure, reduction or amelioration of the intensity of seizure, reduction or amelioration of the frequency of seizure, and/or prevention of the occurrence or re-occurrence of seizure. In this regard, treatment of seizure includes cessation of an ongoing seizure, reduction in the severity of an ongoing seizure, reduction in the duration of an ongoing seizure. Protection against seizure includes forestalling an oncoming seizure.

### Carrier System

**[0131]** Vitamin E is a class of fat soluble methylated phenols. There are at least eight naturally-occurring compounds that comprise this class:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol, and  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, all of which may be used in the compositions and methods of the present invention. There are multiple isomers of each of these compounds, all of which may be used in the compositions and methods of the present invention. There are also multiple esters of each of these compounds, including tocophersolan, all of which may be used in the compositions and methods of the present invention. As used herein, Vitamin E refers to any of the natural or synthetic tocopherols, tocotrienols, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs or derivatives thereof, or any combinations thereof.





### **$\alpha$ -tocopherol**

[0132] The compounds that comprise Vitamin E are antioxidants. There is also evidence that they can prevent, delay the onset of, or ameliorate the symptoms of heart disease, cancer, cataracts, macular degeneration, glaucoma, Alzheimer's, and Parkinson's disease.

[0133] The inventors have found that Vitamin E can provide an effective carrier for benzodiazepine drugs. In some embodiments, benzodiazepines are soluble, or partially soluble, in Vitamin E. In some embodiments, Vitamin E may be present as microparticles, nanoparticles, or any combination thereof. Furthermore, use of Vitamin E can have the added benefit of either avoiding irritation of sensitive mucosal membranes and/or soothing irritated mucosal membranes.

[0134] Vitamin E is generally classified as hydrophobic, and when used as a carrier may be limited to formulations as an emulsion. However, emulsions can have several drawbacks. For instance, they may be difficult to create and can be highly unstable. Additionally, they can leave an oily film on the surface of the skin. Thus, to avoid the drawbacks of emulsions, some embodiments of the present invention comprise solutions of one or more benzodiazepine drugs in  $\Sigma$   $\square$  Vitamin E, ethanol and benzyl alcohol.  $\blacksquare$   $\Sigma$  ~~Vitamin E and one or more lower alkyl alcohols or one or more lower alkyl glycols, or any combinations thereof.~~

~~[0135] Lower alkyl alcohols are those with six or fewer carbon atoms. Thus, any of ethanol, propyl alcohol, butyl alcohol, pentanol, benzyl alcohol, any isomers thereof, or any combinations thereof can be used.~~

~~[0136] Lower alkyl glycols are those with six or fewer carbon atoms. Thus, any of ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, butylene glycol, pentylene glycol, any isomers thereof, or any combinations thereof can be used.~~

### **Additional Excipients**

[0137]  $\Sigma$   $\square$  The composition comprises  $\blacksquare$   $\Sigma$

~~In some embodiments, a composition comprises at least one penetration enhancer in addition to a benzodiazepine drug, a natural or synthetic tocopherol or tocotrienol, and an alcohol or glycol. In some embodiments, the penetration enhancer is at least one alkyl  $\Sigma$   $\square$  glycoside as penetration enhancer.  $\blacksquare$   $\Sigma$  glycoside.~~ In some embodiments, the alkyl

glycoside refers to any sugar joined to any hydrophobic alkyl, as described in United States patent number 5,661,130. The hydrophobic alkyl can be any suitable length, for example about 9 to about 24 carbons in length, especially about 10 to about 14 carbons in length. The hydrophobic alkyl can be branched and/or partially or wholly unsaturated. The alkyl may be joined to the saccharide core for example through a carbonyl group, whereby an ester group may be formed. A suitable alkyl glycoside will have the characteristics of being nontoxic, nonionic, and capable of increasing the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug when it is administered intranasally as described herein. Exemplary saccharides that may be covalently joined to an alkyl according to the present invention include glucose, maltose, maltotriose, maltotetrose, sucrose and trehalose. Exemplary alkyl glycosides that may be employed include octyl-, nonyl-, decyl-, undecyl-, dodecyl-, tridecyl-, tetradecyl-, pentadecyl-, octadecyl  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -D-maltoside, -glucoside or sucroside. In some embodiments, the preferred glycosides include maltose, sucrose or glucose linked by glycosidic linkage to an alkyl chain of 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18 or 20 carbon atoms. Specific excipients that may be employed in a nasal composition according to the invention include alkylsaccharide is dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose

dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or combinations of two or more thereof. Alkyl glycosides that are particularly considered useful in embodiments of the invention include those marketed under the name Intravail<sup>®</sup> by Aegis Therapeutics, LLC, San Diego, CA. Other alkyl glycosides may be selected from those having a hydrophile-lipophile balance (HLB) number of from about 10-20, especially about 11-15. The HLB number may be determined as set forth in the publication US2009/0047347, published on 19 February 2009, the entirety of which, and especially paragraphs [0075]-[0079]. ~~2~~ ~~■~~ The ~~■~~

~~2~~ ~~Where present, the~~

amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is sufficient to enhance the absorption of a benzodiazepine drug administered by the intranasal route. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is selected so as to enhance absorption of the benzodiazepine drug, while at the same time not significantly irritating the nasal mucosa. In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.01% (w/v) to about 1% (w/v). In some embodiments, the amount of alkyl glycoside in the composition is in a range of about 0.05% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v), or about 0.125% (w/v) to about 0.5% (w/v).

**[0138]** The term "penetration enhancer", means any material which acts to increase absorption across the mucosa and/or increases bioavailability. In some embodiments, such materials include mucolytic agents, degradative enzyme inhibitors and compounds which increase permeability of the mucosal cell membranes. Whether a given compound is an "enhancer" can be determined by comparing two formulations comprising a non-associated, small polar molecule as the drug, with or without the enhancer, in an in vivo or good model test and determining whether the uptake of the drug is enhanced to a clinically significant degree. The enhancer should not produce any problems in terms of chronic toxicity because in vivo the enhancer should be non-irritant and/or rapidly metabolized to a normal cell constituent that does not have any significant irritant effect.

**[0139]** In some embodiments, preferred enhancing ~~2~~ ~~■~~ materials are ~~■~~ ~~2~~ ~~materials~~ lysophospholipids, for example

lysophosphatidylcholine obtainable from egg or soy lecithin. Other lysophosphatidylcholines that have different acyl groups as well as lyso compounds produced from phosphatidylethanolamines and phosphatidic acid which have similar membrane modifying properties may be used. Acyl carnitines (e.g. palmitoyl-dl-carnitine-chloride) is an alternative. In some embodiments, a suitable concentration is from 0.02 to 20% (w/v).

**[0140]** In some embodiments, enhancing agents that are appropriate include chelating agents (EGTA, EDTA, alginates), surface active agents (especially non-ionic materials), acyl glycerols, fatty acids and salts, tyloxapol and biological detergents listed in the SIGMA Catalog, 1988, page 316-321. Also agents that modify the membrane fluidity and permeability are appropriate such as enamines (e.g. phenylalanine enamine of ethylacetoacetate), malonates (e.g. diethyleneoxymethylene malonate), salicylates, bile salts and analogues and fusidates. Suitable concentrations are up to 20% (w/v).

**[0141]** Thus, in some embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for nasal administration comprising: a benzodiazepine drug, one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from ~~about~~ 30% to ~~about~~ 95% (w/w); one or more alkyl glycosides; ~~2~~ ~~■~~ and ethanol and benzyl alcohol, ~~■~~ ~~2~~ ~~and one or more alcohols or glycols, or any combinations thereof, in~~ ~~2~~ ~~■~~ a combined ~~■~~ ~~2~~ ~~an~~ amount from ~~about~~

10% to ~~2~~ 50% ~~1~~ 2

~~about 70%~~ (w/w), in a pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation for administration to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is an Intravail® brand alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or a combination of two or more thereof. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is tetradecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose dodecanoate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose monostearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose distearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is a combination of two or more of dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, or sucrose distearate.

[0142] Thus, in some embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for nasal administration comprising: a benzodiazepine drug, which benzodiazepine drug comprises microparticles, nanoparticles or both, one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from ~~about 30%~~ to ~~about 95%~~ (w/w); one or more alkyl glycosides; ~~2~~ ~~1~~ and ethanol and benzyl alcohol, ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~and one or more~~ ~~alcohols or glycols, or any combinations thereof,~~ in ~~2~~ ~~1~~ a combined ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~an~~ amount from ~~about 10%~~ to ~~2~~ ~~1~~ 50% ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~about 70%~~ (w/w), in a

pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation for administration to one or more nasal mucosal membranes of a patient. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is an Intravail® brand alkyl glycoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or a combination of two or more thereof. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is dodecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is tetradecyl maltoside. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose dodecanoate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose monostearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is sucrose distearate. In some embodiments, the alkyl glycoside is a combination of two or more of dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, or sucrose distearate.

## ~~2~~ ~~1~~ Nasal ~~1~~ ~~2~~ Mucosal Membrane Preparations

[0143] ~~2~~ ~~1~~ Nasal ~~1~~ ~~2~~

~~Mucosal membrane~~ preparations are generally administered in metered sprays having volumes of less than 250 µL, preferably less than 150 µL, and ideally from 25 to 100 µL. Although not prohibited in this invention, administration of volumes larger than about 300 µL per dose usually exceeds the absorption capacity of the membranes. This results in a large portion of the pharmaceutically-active ingredient being lost.

[0144] The dosage volume of ~~2~~ ~~1~~ the preparations ~~1~~ ~~2~~ ~~preparations, in particular nasal preparations,~~ preferably ranges from 25 to 100 µL. Volumes in excess of the aforementioned ranges may bypass the sinuses and flow down the back of the throat where the excess is swallowed.

### Alprazolam

[0145] The dosage of alprazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.5 to about 4, preferably about 1 to about 2 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2

to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Alprazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,987,052.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

33

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

[0146] As a nasal formulation, alprazolam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, alprazolam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays

#### **Diazepam**

[0147] The dosage of diazepam may vary by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 20, preferably about 2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Diazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 3,371,085, 3,109,843, 3,136,815 or 3,102,116.

[0148] As a nasal formulation, diazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, diazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Flurazepam**

[0149] The dosage of flurazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 5 to 40, preferably about 20 to about 35 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Flurazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,567,710 or 3,299,053.

[0150] As a nasal formulation, flurazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, flurazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Lorazepam**

[0151] The dosage of Lorazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Lorazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,296,249.

[0152] As a nasal formulation, lorazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, lorazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Medazepam**

[0153] The dosage of medazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Medazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,243,427.

[0154] As a nasal formulation, medazepam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, medazepam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

#### **Mexazolam**

[0155] The dosage of mexazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Mexazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,722,371.

[0156] As a nasal formulation, mexazolam may be administered in 25 to 250 µL metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, mexazolam is administered in 50 to 150 µL, especially about 100 µL, metered sprays.

### Midazolam

[0157] The dosage of midazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 20, preferably about 0.2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Midazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 4,280,957 or 5,831,089.

[0158] As a nasal formulation, midazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, midazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays.

### Temazepam

[0159] The dosage of temazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 50, preferably about 5 to about 30 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Temazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,340,253 or 3,374,225.

[0160] As a nasal formulation, temazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, temazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays.

### Formulation

[0161] Some embodiments comprise administering to ~~the~~ the nasal ~~membranes~~ ~~of a patient a~~ ~~therapeutically effective amount of one or more benzodiazepine drugs, or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof. Some embodiments of the composition disclose a composition comprising one or more benzodiazepine drugs or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof in a concentration up to about 600 mg/mL. Other~~ ~~embodiments~~ ~~disclose a composition comprising one or more benzodiazepine drugs or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof in a concentration of about 10 mg/mL up to about 250 mg/mL. Further, some embodiments disclose a composition comprising one or more benzodiazepine drugs or pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof in a concentration of about 20 mg/mL up to about 50 mg/mL.~~

[0162] Some embodiments disclose a carrier system that is about 50% to about 90% (w/w) Vitamin E and ~~about 10% to about 50% (w/w)~~ ~~of a combination of ethanol and benzyl alcohol. ~~lower alcohol or lower alkyl glycol, or any combinations thereof.~~~~ Some embodiments disclose a carrier system that is about 65% to about 75% (w/w) Vitamin E and about 25% to about 35% (w/w) ~~of a combination of ethanol and benzyl alcohol. ~~lower alkyl alcohol or lower alkyl glycol, or any combinations thereof.~~~~ Further, some embodiments disclose a carrier system that is about 70% (w/w) Vitamin E and about 30% (w/w) ~~of a combination of ethanol and benzyl alcohol. ~~lower alkyl alcohol or lower alkyl glycol, or any combinations thereof.~~~~

[0163] ~~Disclosed is also the administration of~~ ~~Some embodiments of the invention provide a method of administering~~ the benzodiazepine drug composition to a patient. The preferred embodiment comprises use of diazepam. Some embodiments ~~of the method~~ disclose a dosage level of diazepam of about 1.0 mg to about 20.0 mg until achievement of the desired result. Other dosage levels disclose a dosage level of about 2.0 mg to about 15.0 mg until the desired result is achieved. Some embodiments disclose a dosage level of about 5.0 mg to about 10.0 mg until the desired result is achieved.

[0164] In some embodiments of the method, the dosage volume ranges from about 10  $\mu\text{L}$  to about 200  $\mu\text{L}$ . In some embodiments, the dosage volume ranges from about 20  $\mu\text{L}$  to about 180  $\mu\text{L}$ . Further, some embodiments disclose a dosage volume of about 50  $\mu\text{L}$  to about 140  $\mu\text{L}$ . In some embodiments, the dosage volume is 50  $\mu\text{L}$ , 75  $\mu\text{L}$  or 100  $\mu\text{L}$  per nostril.

#### Formulation Process

[0165] In some embodiments, the composition for nasal administration is substantially free of benzodiazepine microparticles, nanoparticles or combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the composition is made by slowly warming or heating the Vitamin E until it is liquefied. Next, the one or more benzodiazepine drugs are added. The mixture is stirred and heated until the one or more benzodiazepine drugs dissolve or are substantially dissolved. Next, ~~the one or more alcohols or glycols, or any combinations thereof,~~ both ethanol and benzyl alcohol are added to the composition. This composition is stirred until a less viscous composition is achieved.

[0166] The formulation process may be adjusted to take into consideration variations in the formulation. For example, as depicted in Figure 4, formulations comprising both benzyl alcohol and ethanol may be formulated by first combining Vitamin E, benzyl alcohol and ethanol (*e.g.*, dehydrated alcohol, USP), mixing until the ingredients are homogenous, heating the mixture to about 45°C ( $\pm 2^\circ\text{C}$ ), adding alkyl glycoside and mixing until the alkyl glycoside is dissolved and the solution is homogenous, adding benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam) while maintaining the mixture at about 45 °C, cooling the solution to about 25°C ( $\pm 2^\circ\text{C}$ ) and adding ethanol (Q.S.) to achieve the final target weight of solution, mixing well to assure homogeneity. Solutions manufactured according to this process may be formulated in different concentrations of diazepam. For example, some embodiments of the invention include diazepam formulations summarized in the following table. While diazepam is used as an illustration in Figure 4 and the following table, any benzodiazepines may also be used, such as alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, lopraxolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof.

[0167] NRL-1 Quantitative Composition. The formulations are for nasal administration.

Component	Solution Concentration		
	50mg/mL	75 mg/mL	100 mg/mL
Vitamin E	56.47 mg	56.47 mg	56.47 mg
Benzyl alcohol	10.50 mg	10.50 mg	10.50 mg
Diazepam	5.00 mg	7.50 mg	10.00 mg
Intravail A3 <sup>®</sup>	0.25 mg	0.25 mg	0.25 mg
Dehydrated ethanol	q.s. to 100 $\mu\text{L}$	q.s. to 100 $\mu\text{L}$	q.s. to 100 $\mu\text{L}$

[0168] In some embodiments, the aforementioned formulations are sterile solutions with a bacteria count of 10 below the allowable level on a per mL basis. Additionally, pathogens are preferably absent. In some embodiments, the solutions are self-preserving, self-sterile or both.

[0169] ~~In some embodiments, the benzodiazepine drug is formulated as a~~ microparticulate and/or

~~nanoparticulate suspension of the benzodiazepine could benzodiazepine. Preparation of microparticulate and nanoparticulate benzodiazepine may be accomplished by methods such as milling, etc. Such methods are known to those skilled in the art.~~

[0170] Figure 5 depicts one embodiment of a process of manufacturing a suspension of benzodiazepine

not according to the instant invention. First, the benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam) is sieved to produce a micronized benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam). The micronized benzodiazepine (*e.g.*, diazepam) is then split into two intermediates products - Diazepam A (high pressure) is a small particle size (mean particle size < 2000 nm) and Diazepam B (low pressure) is a large particle size (mean particle diameter > 2000 nm). After in-process testing, the two intermediate products are combined with one or more excipients in correct proportions to produce a bimodal particle suspension having a pre-selected mean particle diameter, which in some embodiments is greater than 2000 nm. In some embodiments, the excipients are prepared according to the second column in Figure 5, *e.g.* by first combining propylene glycol, water and vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate to form a mixture and heating the mixture until the ingredients are dissolved, then adding methylparaben, propyl paraben and Intravail™ (alkyl glycoside) to the mixture and mixing until the newly added ingredients are dissolved, and finally cooling the mixture, *e.g.* to 25°C ± 2°C. The excipients can then be combined with Micronized Diazepam A and Micronized Diazepam B and mixed vigorously to disperse the micronized Diazepam to form the suspension. Next, povidone is added to the mixture, which is mixed until the povidone is fully dissolved. Finally, the suspension is brought to its final target weight with purified water and mixed well to achieve homogeneity. The final product can then be filled into suitable containers. In some embodiments, 3 mL may be filled into 4 mL amber glass vials with PTFE lined phenolic closures, though other containers are of course possible.

~~possible and contemplated within the scope of the invention.~~ As diazepam is depicted in Figure 5 as an exemplary benzodiazepine, any benzodiazepines, such as alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam, halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof may also be employed.

[0171]

[0172] In the present invention,

~~some embodiments,~~ the benzodiazepine drug is formulated as a solution. It is considered an aspect of the invention that employment of microparticulate and/or nanoparticulate benzodiazepine drug during the process of preparing the formulation can improve the overall solubility of the benzodiazepine drug in the solvent system.



EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

37

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

### **Additional Active and Inactive Ingredients**

**[0173]** Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional ingredient in the composition selected from active ingredients. By way of non-limiting example, such active ingredients include insulin, calcitonins (for example porcine, human, salmon, chicken, or eel) and synthetic modifications thereof, enkephalins, LHRH and analogues (Nafarelin, Buserelin, Zolidex), GHRH (growth hormone releasing hormone), nifedipin, THF (thymic humoral factor), CGRP (calcitonin gene related peptide), atrial natriuretic peptide, antibiotics, metoclopramide, ergotamine, Pizotizin, nasal vaccines (particularly HIV vaccines, measles, rhinovirus Type 13 and respiratory syncytial virus), pentamidine, CCK (Cholecystikinine), DDVAP, Interferons, growth hormone (solatotropir polypeptides or their derivatives (preferably with a molecular weight from 1000 to 300000)), secretin, bradykinin antagonists, GRF (Growth releasing factor), THF, TRH (Thyrotropin releasing hormone), ACTH analogues, IGF (Insulin like growth factors), CGRP (Calcitonin gene related peptide) Atrial Natriuretic peptide, Vasopressin and analogues (DDAVP, Lypressin), Metoclopramide, Migraine treatment (Dihydroergotamine, Ergometrine, Ergotamine, Pizotizin), Nasal Vaccines (Particularly AIDS vaccines) FACTOR VIII, Colony Stimulating factors, G-CSF (granulocyte-colony stimulating factor), EPO (Erythropoitin) PTH (Parathyroid hormone) or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or combinations thereof.

**[0174]** Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional ingredient in the composition selected from other anticonvulsants. By way of non-limiting example, such active ingredients include: paraldehyde; aromatic allylic alcohols (such as stiripentol); barbiturates (e.g. phenobarbitol, primidone, methylphenobarbital, metharbital and barbexaclone); bromides (such as potassium bromide); carbamates (such as felbamate); carboxamides (such as carbamazepine and oxcarbazepine); fatty acids (such as valproic acid, sodium valproate, and divalproex sodium, vigabatrin, progabide, tiagabine); fructose, topiramate, Gaba analogs (e.g. gabapentin and pregabalin); hydantoins (e.g. ethotoin, phenytoin, mephentyoin and fosphenytoin); oxazolinediones (such as paramethadione, trimethadione, ethadione); propionates (e.g. beclamide), pyrimidinediones (e.g. primidone); pyrrolidines (e.g. brivaracetam, levetiracetam and seletracetam); succinimides (e.g. ethosuximide, phensuximide and mesuximide); sulfonamides (e.g. acetazolamide, sulthiame, methazolamide and zonisamide); triazines (such as lamotrigine); ureas (such as pheneturide, phenacemide); valproylamides (such as valpromide and valnoctamide); as well as other anticonvulsants or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or combinations thereof.

**[0175]** Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional ingredient in the composition selected from other anticonvulsants. By way of non-limiting example, such active ingredients include: antibiotics and antimicrobial agents such as tetracycline hydrochloride, leucomycin, penicillin, penicillin derivatives, erythromycin, gentamicin, sulphathiazole and nitrofurazone; local anaesthetics such as benzocaine; vasoconstrictors such as phenylephrine hydrochloride, tetrahydrozoline hydrochloride, naphazoline nitrate, oxymetazoline hydrochloride and tramazoline hydrochloride; cardiotonics such as digitalis and digoxin; vasodilators such as nitroglycerine and papaverine hydrochloride; antiseptics such as chlorhexidine hydrochloride, hexylresorcinol, dequaliniumchloride and

ethacridine; enzymes such as lysozyme chloride, dextranase; bone metabolism controlling agents such as vitamin D, active vitamin D and vitamin C; sex hormones; hypotensives; sedatives; anti-tumor agents; steroidal anti-inflammatory agents such as hydrocortisone, prednisone, fluticasone, prednisolone, triamcinolone, triamcinolone acetonide, dexamethasone, betamethasone, beclomethasone, and beclomethasone dipropionate; non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents such as acetaminophen, aspirin, aminopyrine, phenylbutazone, medanamic acid, ibuprofen, diclofenac sodium, indomethacine, colchicine, and probenocid; enzymatic anti-inflammatory agents such as chymotrypsin and bromelain seratiopeptidase; anti-histaminic agents such as diphenhydramine hydrochloride, chlorpheniramine maleate and clemastine; anti-allergic agents and antitussive-expectorant antasthmatic agents such as sodium chromoglycate, codeine phosphate, and isoproterenol hydrochloride or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or combinations thereof.

[0176] Additionally, some embodiments of the compositions and methods of using the compositions comprise an additional inactive ingredient in the composition. By way of non-limiting example, minor amounts of ingredients such as stabilizers, coloring agents, pH adjusters, buffering agents, preservatives such as agents which may prevent degradation, wetting agents, and flavoring agents may also be present. Examples of coloring agents include  $\beta$ -carotene, Red No. 2 and Blue No. 1. Examples of preservatives include stearic acid, ascorbyl stearate and ascorbic acid. Examples of corrigents include menthol and citrus perfume.

[0177] In some embodiments, the drug delivery system of the invention may advantageously comprise an absorption enhancer. The term "enhancer", means any material which acts to increase absorption across the mucosa and/or increases bioavailability. In some embodiments, such materials include mucolytic agents, degradative enzyme inhibitors and compounds which increase permeability of the mucosal cell membranes. Whether a given compound is an "enhancer" can be determined by comparing two formulations comprising a non-associated, small polar molecule as the drug, with or without the enhancer, in an in vivo or good model test and determining whether the uptake of the drug is enhanced to a clinically significant degree. The enhancer should not produce any problems in terms of chronic toxicity because in vivo the enhancer should be non-irritant and/or rapidly metabolized to a normal cell constituent that does not have any significant irritant effect.

[0178] In some embodiments, preferred enhancing materials are ~~materials~~ lysophospholipids, for example

lysophosphatidylcholine obtainable from egg or soy lecithin. Other lysophosphatidylcholines that have different acyl groups as well as lyso compounds produced from phosphatidylethanolamines and phosphatidic acid which have similar membrane modifying properties may be used. Acyl carnitines (e.g. palmitoyl-dl-carnitine-chloride) is an alternative. In some embodiments, a suitable concentration is from 0.02 to 20% (w/v).

[0179] In some embodiments, enhancing agents that are appropriate include chelating agents (EGTA, EDTA, alginates), surface active agents (especially non-ionic materials), acyl glycerols, fatty acids and salts, tyloxapol and biological detergents listed in the SIGMA Catalog, 1988, page 316-321. Also agents that modify the membrane fluidity and permeability are appropriate such as enamines (e.g. phenylalanine enamine of ethylacetoacetate), malonates (e.g. diethyleneoxymethylene malonate), salicylates, bile salts and analogues and fusidates. Suitable concentrations are up to 20% (w/v).

[0180] In some embodiments, the invention takes advantage of delivery of a drug incorporated into or onto a bioadhesive microsphere with an added pharmaceutical adjuvant ~~z~~ ~~■~~ that applies ~~■~~ ~~z~~ ~~applies~~ to systems that contain active drug and mucolytic agent, peptidase inhibitors or non-drug polypeptide substrate singly or in combination. Suitably mucolytic agents are thiol-containing compounds such as N-acetylcysteine and derivatives thereof. Peptide inhibitors include actinonin, amastatin, bestatin, chloroacetyl-HOLeu-Ala-Gly-NH.sub.2, diprotin A and B, ebelactone A and B, E-64, leupeptin, pepstatin A, phisphoramidon, H-Thr-(tBu)-Phe-Pro-OH, aprotinin, kallikrein, chymostatin, benzamidine, chymotrypsin and trypsin. Suitable concentrations are from 0.01 to 10% (w/v). The person skilled in the art will readily be able to determine whether an enhancer should be included.

### Administration

[0181] ~~z~~ ~~■~~ The ~~■~~ ~~z~~ ~~In some embodiments, the~~ administration of the composition comprises administering at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition onto at least one ~~z~~ ~~■~~ nasal ~~■~~ ~~z~~ ~~mucosal~~ membrane. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into at least one nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying at least a portion of the therapeutically effective amount of the composition into each nostril. In some embodiments, the administration of the composition comprises spraying a first quantity of the composition into the first nostril, spraying a second quantity of the composition into a second nostril, and optionally after a pre-selected time delay, spraying a third quantity of the composition into the first nostril. Some embodiments further comprise, optionally after a pre-selected time delay, administering at least a fourth quantity of the composition to the second nostril.

### Alprazolam

[0182] The dosage of alprazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.5 to about 4, preferably about 1 to about 2 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Alprazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,987,052.

[0183] As a nasal formulation, alprazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, alprazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

40

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

### **Diazepam**

**[0184]** The dosage of diazepam may vary by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 20, preferably about 2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Diazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 3,371,085, 3,109,843, 3,136,815 or 3,102,116.

**[0185]** As a nasal formulation, diazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, diazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

### **Flurazepam**

**[0186]** The dosage of flurazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 5 to 40, preferably about 20 to about 35 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Flurazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,567,710 or 3,299,053.

**[0187]** As a nasal formulation, flurazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, flurazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

### **Lorazepam**

**[0188]** The dosage of Lorazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

41

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Lorazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,296,249.

**[0189]** As a nasal formulation, lorazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, lorazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Medazepam**

**[0190]** The dosage of medazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Medazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,243,427.

**[0191]** As a nasal formulation, medazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu$ L metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, medazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu$ L, especially about 100  $\mu$ L, metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Mexazolam**

**[0192]** The dosage of mexazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 10, preferably about 0.2 to about 1 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Mexazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,722,371.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

42

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

**[0193]** As a nasal formulation, mexazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, mexazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Midazolam**

**[0194]** The dosage of midazolam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 0.1 to about 20, preferably about 0.2 to about 10 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Midazolam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in one of United States patents 4,280,957 or 5,831,089.

**[0195]** As a nasal formulation, midazolam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, midazolam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

#### **Temazepam**

**[0196]** The dosage of temazepam varies by indication, however it is expected that a therapeutic dose will be in the range of about 1 to about 50, preferably about 5 to about 30 mg per dose, from 1 to 8, preferably from 2 to 8, and in some preferred embodiments about 4 to about 6 times per day. Temazepam may be manufactured using the process disclosed in United States patent 3,340,253 or 3,374,225.

**[0197]** As a nasal formulation, temazepam may be administered in 25 to 250  $\mu\text{L}$  metered sprays. In some preferred embodiments, temazepam is administered in 50 to 150  $\mu\text{L}$ , especially about 100  $\mu\text{L}$ , metered sprays. In some embodiments, a first metered spray is applied to a first nostril and if necessary a second metered

spray is applied to a second nostril. In some optional embodiments, a third metered spray is applied to the first nostril. In some embodiments, a fourth metered spray is applied to the second nostril. In some embodiments, additional metered sprays are applied to alternating nostrils until the full target therapeutic dose has been administered to the patient. In some embodiments, there is a time increment of from several seconds to 5 minutes, preferably about 10 seconds to about 1 minute, between applications of benzodiazepine drug to the same nostril. This allows time for the drug to cross the nasal mucosa and enter the blood stream. Multiple applications of metered sprays to each nostril, optionally separated by a time interval, allows administration of a full therapeutic dose in increments small enough to permit full absorption of the benzodiazepine drug into the blood stream and avoid loss of drug down the back of the throat.

[0198] Those skilled in the art will be aware that a systematic, therapeutically effective amount of benzodiazepine drugs for treating ~~the aforementioned disorders~~ seizures will vary with age, size, weight, and general physical condition of the patient as well as the severity of the disease. Frequency of administration will likewise vary with the formulation of the composition and it can be adjusted so that any suitable number of doses per day may be used.

### Examples

[0199] The invention will now be illustrated with reference to the following illustrative, non-limiting examples.

#### **Example 1**

(not according to the invention)

[0200] A pharmaceutical composition comprising diazepam is prepared. It is formulated as a solution to be delivered via a nasal delivery device. The composition is used to treat or prevent seizures associated with epilepsy in adults. Treatment is administered either before or after a seizure has begun. If the patient is seizing, it is administered as 1 puff from any nasal delivery device (1 puff at 5.0 mg/puff (5.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.1 mL/puff)) every 5 minutes until cessation of the seizure. However, it can be given as 1 puff per nostril in each nostril (2 puffs at 2.5 mg/puff (5.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.05 mL/puff)) every 5 minutes until cessation of the seizure. The composition according to this example is set forth in the following table.

Table 1-1 (not claimed)

5.0 mg/0.1mL	Diazepam
70.0 mg	$\alpha$ -tocopherol
0.1 mL	ethanol (qs ad to 0.1 mL)

**Example 2**

2 ■ (not according to the invention) ■ 2

[0201] A pharmaceutical composition comprising diazepam is prepared. It is formulated as a solution to be delivered via a nasal delivery device. The composition is used to treat or prevent seizures associated with epilepsy in children. Treatment is administered either before or after a seizure has begun. If the patient is seizing, it is administered as 1 puff from any nasal delivery device (1 puff at 2.0 mg/puff (2.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.1 mL/puff)). If the seizure fails to stop another dose may be administered after 5 minutes. However, it can be given as 1 puff per nostril in each nostril (2 puffs at 1.0 mg/puff (2.0 mg/0.1 mL and 0.05 mL/puff)). If the seizure fails to stop another dose may be administered after 5 minutes. The composition according to this example is set forth in the following table.

Table 2-1 (not claimed)

2.0 mg/0.1mL	Diazepam
70.0 mg	$\alpha$ -tocopherol
0.1 mL	ethanol (qs ad to 0.1 mL)

**Example 3 – Formulation of Diazepam Solutions**

2 ■ (not according to the invention) ■ 2

[0202] In general, benzodiazepine solutions may be formulated by combining one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols and one or more lower alcohols or glycols and mixing until a homogeneous mixture is formed, adding the benzodiazepine drug to the homogeneous mixture, heating and mixing the ingredients until the benzodiazepine is fully dissolved in the homogeneous mixture, cooling the mixture, and bringing the mixture to its final mass or volume with lower alcohol or glycol.

[0203] Two different diazepam solutions were formulated by the foregoing process. Vitamin E USP and dehydrated ethanol USP were combined in the amounts set forth in the following table and mixed to form a homogeneous mixture. Diazepam in the amounts set forth in the following table was then added to the homogeneous mixture. The ingredients were heated to 40-45°C with mixing until the diazepam was fully dissolved, thereby forming a solution. The solution was cooled to 20-25°C, whereupon the solution was brought to its final target weight with dehydrated ethanol USP and the solution was mixed thoroughly to assure homogeneity. The solution was then sampled for in-process testing and packaged in 3 mL amber glass vials.

Table 3-1: Diazepam Solutions – 70 mg/mL (not claimed)

Component	Solution 00 (65% Vitamin E)	Solution 02 (80% Vitamin E)
	Concentration (mg/mL)	Concentration (mg/mL)
Diazepam USP	70.0	70.0
Vitamin E USP	650.0	800.0
Dehydrated Ethanol USP	q.s. to 1 mL	q.s. to 1 mL



[0204] Additional solutions of diazepam at varying concentrations are made in a similar manner, by varying the amount of diazepam and the relative amounts of Vitamin E and ethanol. Other benzodiazepine solutions are made by substituting one or more benzodiazepines for diazepam. Other ingredients, such as alkyl glycoside, can be added at a suitable step in the process (e.g. before or concurrently with the addition of benzodiazepine).

**Example 5 -- Stability of Diazepam Solutions** **Solutions not according to the invention**

[0205] Solutions 00 and 02 (Example 3) were set up on stability at 25°C / 60% RH, 30°C / 65% RH and 40°C / 75% RH. One batch each of the two different formulations, packaged in 3-ml vials with screw-top closures, along with corresponding actuators, were set up at three storage conditions. They are listed in Table 1 with their corresponding Particle Sciences initial sample control numbers.

Table 5-1: Summary of PSI sample control numbers

Formulation #	25°C/60% RH	30°C/65% RH	40°C/75% RH
Solution 00 – 70 mg/ml solution, 65% Vitamin E	083101.01	083101.02	083101.02
Solution 02 – 70 mg/ml solution, 80% vitamin E	083102.01	083102.02	083102.03

[0206] Summaries of the average assay values and all other results are given in Tables 5-4, 5-5,. The results for the initial, 1-month and 3-month time points are also shown for comparison. Individual spray content uniformity results are given in Tables 5-8, 5-9, 5-10, and 5-11..

[0207] In general, all of the assays and the other results are similar to the initial data, with the exceptions of diazepam related compounds A and B.

[0208] Related compound A did not meet the specification of not more than (NMT) 0.01% for some samples (see Table 2). Related compound A has increased with time and temperature.

Table 5-2: Summary of related compound A T6M results

Solution/Suspension #	25°C/60% RH	30°C/65% RH	40°C/75% RH
Solution 00	Meets specification	0.058%	0.051%
Solution 02	Meets specification	Meets specification	Meets specification

[0209] Related compound B is also increasing with time and temperature, and now fails specification of NMT 0.1% at 40°C condition for both suspension and one solution formulation. Only formulation 2602 meets all impurity specifications.

Table 5-3: Summary of related compound B T6M results

Solution/Suspension #	25°C/60% RH	30°C/65% RH	40°C/75% RH
Solution 00	Meets specification	Meets specification	0.398%

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

46

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Solution 02	Meets specification	Meets specification	Meets specification
-------------	---------------------	---------------------	---------------------

Table 5-4: Summary of Solution 00 results

Solution 00, 70mg/mL, 65% Vitamin E	Specifications	Initial	1	1	1	3	3	3	6	6	6
			mont h 25°C/ 60 %R H	mont h 30°C/ 65 %R H	mont h 40°C/ 75 %R H	mont h 25°C/ 60 %R H	mont h 30°C/ 65 %R H	mont h 40°C/ 75 %R H	mont h 25°C/ 60 %R H	mont h 30°C/ 65 %R H	mont h 40°C/ 75 %R H
Description	Yellow to orange solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Identification – UV	Conforms to reference std. UV and RT	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Assay Diazepam (%)	90.0 to 110.0%	100.1	100.3	93.9	98.8	96.3	96.9	101.2	97.5	94.6	100.6
Impurities (%) <sup>(1)</sup>											
Nordazepam	NMT 0.3%	0.005	0.01	0.014	0.019	0.013	0.013	0.013	0.013	0.013	0.013
Related Compound B	NMT 0.1%	ND	0.002	0.007	0.03	0.008	0.016	0.089	0.024	0.098	0.398
Related Compound A	NMT 0.01%	0.002	0.002	0.004	0.011	0.002	0.002	0.01	0.005	0.058	0.051
Unknown	NMT 0.1%	0.011	0.012	0.014	0.02	0.037	0.039	0.047	0.035	0.066	0.055
Total	NMT 1.0%	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.1	0.2	0.5
Microbial Limits	Meets USP {61}	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	pass	not tested	not tested
Fill weight (g)	report results	1.108	1.105	1.111	1.112	1.109	1.109	1.113	1.103	1.111	1.109
Fill volume (ml)	report results	1.192	1.189	1.195	1.196	1.193	1.193	1.198	1.187	1.195	1.193
Spray delivered (µl)	report results	133.9	140.7	146.8	140.5	149.1	143.5	139.6	131.4	not tested	136.4
Average Spray Content (%)	report results	95.0	101.2	100.4	99.4	99.7	94.6	99.4	95.7	not tested	108.7
Viscosity (Pa*s)	report results	0.14	0.086	0.12	0.12	0.096	0.14	0.12	0.12	0.11	0.11

<sup>(1)</sup> LOQ is approximately 0.006%, LOD is approximately 0.002%. Results below LOQ are reported in this table for trending purposes.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

47

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Table 5-5: Summary of Solution 02 results

Solution 02, 70mg/mL, 65% Vitamin E	Specifica- -tions	Initial	1	1	1	3	3	3	6	6	6
			month 25°C/ 60 %RH	month 30°C/ 65 %RH	month 40°C/ 75 %RH	month 25°C/ 60 %RH	month 30°C/ 65 %RH	month 40°C/ 75 %RH	month 25°C/ 60 %RH	month 30°C/ 65 %RH	month 40°C/ 75 %RH
Description	Yellow to orange sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n	Amber sol'n
Identification – UV	Con-forms to referenc e std. UV and RT	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Assay Diazepam (%)	90.0 to 110.0%	100.5	94.9	96.2	103.3	98.0	97.2	99.6	97.0	94.3	100.3
Impurities (%) <sup>(1)</sup>											
Nordazepam	NMT 0.3%	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.005	0.005	0.006	0.005	0.004	0.005
Related Compound B	NMT 0.1%	ND	0.002	0.003	0.006	0.003	0.005	0.032	0.007	0.020	0.058
Related Compound A	NMT 0.01%	0.003	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.002	0.002	0.004	0.003	0.009	0.007
Unknown	NMT 0.1%	0.01	0.012	0.014	0.018	0.019	0.025	0.032	0.014	0.020	0.018
Total	NMT 1.0%	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.0	0.1	0.1
Microbial Limits	Meets USP {61}	pass	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	pass	not tested	not tested
Fill weight (g)	report results	1.135	1.117	1.128	1.123	1.116	1.133	1.137	1.124	1.133	1.127
Fill volume (ml)	report results	1.184	1.165	1.177	1.172	1.164	1.182	1.186	1.172	1.183	1.176
Spray delivered (µl)	report results	115.0	137.5	137.6	133.1	143.9	136.3	143.8	129.3	not tested	124.2
Average Spray Content (%)	report results	98.6	97.6	97.7	100.7	98.7	94.7	100.5	95.8	not tested	97.1
Viscosity (Pa*s)	report results	0.69	0.68	0.64	0.68	0.63	0.65	0.64	0.61	0.55	0.56

(1) LOQ is approximately 0.006%, LOD is approximately 0.002%. Results below LOQ are reported in this table for trending purposes.

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

48

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Table 5-8: Solution 00 25°C/60% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.13061	0.13259	9.59355	97.89
2	0.13217	0.13451	9.78206	99.82
3	0.12365	0.13332	8.85797	90.39
4	0.12761	0.13072	9.39720	95.89
5	0.14702	0.15216	8.91438	90.96
6	0.13414	0.13702	9.22442	94.13
7	0.12959	0.13384	9.84590	100.47
8	0.12367	0.14603	8.88093	90.62
9	0.13367	0.13425	9.92610	101.29
Average	0.13135	0.13716	9.380	95.72
St. Dev.	0.0070	0.0071	0.4309	4.3970
% RSD	5.35	5.20	4.59	4.59

Table 5-9: Solution 00 40°C/75% RH spray content uniformity results

Sample	Weight Collected, g	Weight Actuated, g	Diazepam Recovered, mg	% Diazepam Recovered
1	0.14139	0.15111	10.57237	107.88
2	0.14731	0.15146	11.62831	118.66
3	0.14489	0.14684	10.94206	111.65
4	0.14237	0.14873	11.94883	121.93
5	0.12188	0.13415	9.78103	99.81
6	0.12756	0.13047	9.78347	99.83
7	0.13549	0.13841	10.45221	106.66
8	0.12323	0.12543	9.41177	96.04
9	0.14299	0.14517	11.35701	115.89
Average	0.13635	0.14131	10.653	108.70
St. Dev.	0.0097	0.0095	0.8884	9.0649
% RSD	7.14	6.76	8.34	8.34

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

49

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Table 5-10: Solution 02 25°C/60% RH spray content uniformity results

<b>Sample</b>	<b>Weight Collected, g</b>	<b>Weight Actuated, g</b>	<b>Diazepam Recovered, mg</b>	<b>% Diazepam Recovered</b>
1	0.12280	0.12611	8.88043	90.62
2	0.13318	0.13549	9.55581	97.51
3	0.13260	0.13452	9.71837	99.17
4	0.12064	0.12305	9.48123	96.75
5	0.13215	0.13582	9.34463	95.35
6	0.13559	0.13790	9.48722	96.81
7	0.13158	0.13371	9.43613	96.29
8	0.13357	0.13495	9.79164	99.91
9	0.12165	0.12443	8.84732	90.28
Average	0.12931	0.13178	9.394	95.85
St. Dev.	0.0058	0.0056	0.3303	3.3701
% RSD	4.52	4.25	3.52	3.52

Table 5-11: Solution 02 40°C/75% RH spray content uniformity results

<b>Sample</b>	<b>Weight Collected, g</b>	<b>Weight Actuated, g</b>	<b>Diazepam Recovered, mg</b>	<b>% Diazepam Recovered</b>
1	0.12336	0.12563	9.02005	92.04
2	0.05723	0.05792	9.43076	96.23
3	0.13554	0.13908	9.93829	101.41
4	0.13619	0.13679	9.87755	100.79
5	0.13227	0.13414	9.64403	98.41
6	0.13331	0.13515	9.80808	100.08
7	0.13455	0.13844	9.31952	95.10
8	0.13314	0.13736	9.28106	94.70
9	0.13249	0.13387	9.32935	95.20
Average	0.12423	0.12649	9.517	97.11
St. Dev.	0.0254	0.0260	0.3148	3.2119
% RSD	20.45	20.57	3.31	3.31

**Example 6**

2 ■ (not according to the invention) ■ 2

[0210] All of the solutions described in Example 3 and formulated as described in Example 3, with the addition of a suitable amount of an alkyl glycoside, as described herein, such as dodecyl maltoside, tetradecyl maltoside, sucrose dodecanoate, sucrose monostearate, sucrose distearate, and/or combinations of two or more thereof, or marketed as Intravail® by Aegis Therapeutics, San Diego, CA. The solutions with added alkyl glycoside may then be put up on stability as described in Example 5, *mutatis mutandis*.

**Example 7**

2 ■ (not according to the invention) ■ 2

[0211] The solutions of Examples 3 and 6 are evaluated for pharmacokinetics in a suitable animal model, such as in mice, rats, rabbits or dogs. First each animal (e.g. rabbit) is administered an amount of a benzodiazepine drug intravenously. The amount of intravenously dosed benzodiazepine drug is selected to be less, e.g. roughly half, of what is considered an effective dose administered nasally. For example, the intravenous dose of diazepam administered to rabbits is about 0.05 to about 0.2 mg/kg, e.g. about 0.1 mg/kg. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at specific time points post-administration. Plasma blood levels of the drug are assayed for each of the blood samples. After at least a one day washout period, each animal is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution as described in Examples 3 and 6. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at substantially the same specific time points as the IV dose post-administration. Pharmacokinetic curves (blood plasma concentration of drug versus time) are constructed for the intravenous route of administration and for each of the solutions administered by the intranasal administration route.

[0212] Toxicity is assessed by known means. In particular, histological samples are collected from the nasal mucosal tissues of the test animals. Other toxicological methods are optionally employed as well.

**Example 8**

2 ■ (not according to the invention) ■ 2

[0213] The solutions of Examples 3 and 6 are evaluated for their ability to deliver drug across the blood brain barrier in a suitable animal model, such as in mice, rats, rabbits or dogs. Each animal is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution as described in Examples 3 and 6, with the solution optionally containing an imaging agent, such as a dye, that may be used as a proxy for determining the ability of the drug to cross the blood brain barrier. The drug or imaging agent is detected at selected time points after administration of the or solution to determine how well the drug or imaging agent crosses the blood brain barrier. These results may be compared with analogous result obtained with an intravenous solution containing the drug or imaging agent.

**Example 9** 2 ■ (not according to the invention) ■ 2

[0214] The above-described solutions can be evaluated for pharmacokinetics in humans. Normal, healthy human test subjects are administered an amount of the drug intravenously. The amount chosen for intravenous administration may be any amount, but is conveniently a dose that is considered effective in treating seizure in humans. For example, an IV dose of diazepam administered to humans may be in the range of 1 to 15 mg, e.g. about 7.5 mg. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at selected time points after administration. Plasma blood levels of the drug are assayed for each of the blood samples. After at least a one day washout period, each subject is administered, intranasally, an amount of a solution as described herein. Blood is collected immediately before administration and at substantially the same time points after administration as the intravenous time points. Pharmacokinetic curves (blood plasma concentration of drug versus time) are constructed for the intravenous and intranasal administration routes.

#### Example 10

2 ■ (not according to the invention) ■ 2

[0215] The above-described solutions can be evaluated for efficacy in a suitable animal model. Briefly, for each dose of solution to be tested, a test animal is stimulated with a seizure inducing stimulus. The stimulus may be light, sound, chemical or other stimulus effective to induce seizure in the model animal. Once the animal has begun to seize, a solution as described herein is administered intranasally to the animal. The efficacy of the dose of the solution is evaluated based upon the animal's response to the test dose. This procedure is repeated through sufficient iterations, and at sufficient numbers of doses, to identify a dose that is considered effective to treat seizure by intranasal administration of the drug.

#### Example 11

[0216] A pharmaceutical composition comprising diazepam was prepared as a composition formulated as a solution to be delivered via a nasal delivery device. The solution was prepared according to the procedure outlined in the flow diagram of Figure 4. The ingredients used in the 100 mg/mL diazepam solution are set forth in Table 11-1, below:

Table 11-1

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Concentration</u> <u>(% (w/v))</u>
Diazepam	10.00 % (w/v)
$\alpha$ -tocopherol*	56.47 % (w/v)
Ethanol (dehydrated)	q.s. ((~18.07) % (w/v))
Intravail A3**	0.25 % (w/v)
Benzyl alcohol	10.50 % (w/v)

\*Vitamin E, \*\*Dodecyl maltoside

[0217] A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 25°C/60% R.H. for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 3 month, 6 month and 12 month time points.

[0218]

EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

52

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	99.5	99.2	99.1

[0219] A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 30°C/65% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 1 month and 12 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	97.8	99.7

[0220] A batch of solution of Table 11-1 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 40°C/75% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 12 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 3 month, 6 month and 12 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month	6 Month
Appearance	Pale amber to amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution	Amber solution
Diazepam % Label Claim	103.3	97.9	100.0	99.4

[0221] The suspension formulation is set forth in Table 11-2 (not claimed), below



EP 12 801 372.9-1455  
Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

53

EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

Component	Function	Concentration (mg/mL)
Diazepam	Active	100.0
Methyl Paraben	Preservative	2.0
Propyl Paraben	Preservative	0.5
Intravail A3	Absorption aid	2.5
Vitamin E TPGS	Dispersant	10.0
Propylene Glycol	Dispersant	100.0
Povidone	Suspending agent	5.0
Water	Carrier	q.s. to 1.0 mL

[0222] A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 25°C/60% R.H. for 3 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial and 3 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	3 Month
Appearance	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid
Diazepam % Label Claim	104.4	102.1

[0223] A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 30°C/65% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 1 month. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial and 1 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month
Appearance	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid
Diazepam % Label Claim	104.4	102.9

[0224] A batch of suspension of Table 11-2 was prepared and subjected to stability testing at 40°C/75% R.H. (accelerated conditions) for 3 months. The following table provides stability determinations for this batch at initial, 1 month and 3 month time points.

Test Parameter	Initial % Label Claim (100 mg/mL)	1 Month	3 Month
Appearance	Opaque white liquid	Opaque white liquid	White liquid
Diazepam % Label Claim	104.4	102.7	108.7

[0225] A three-period, three-treatment, six-sequence, randomized cross-over study was conducted in healthy volunteers. For each dose, each volunteer was domiciled for at least 12 hours prior to each dose and until after a 24 hour pharmacokinetic sample was collected. Single doses of 100 µL of the pharmaceutical compositions described in Tables 11-1 and 11-2 were administered to each volunteer as one spray to the left nostril of 100 µL per spray. Pharmacokinetic samples were collected at 22 time points over 10 days. (PK time points: 2.5, 5, 10, 15, 20, 30 and 45 minutes, 1, 1.5, 2, 4, 12, 24, 36, 48, 72, 96, 144, 192 and 240 hours after each dose.) No

serious adverse events were noted. PK data were compared with those obtained with 5 mg of diazepam administered intravenously. The PK data are summarized in Table 11-3 and Figures 1-3.

[0226] The solution of Table 11-1 and the suspension of Table 11-2 were found to be well-tolerated with only mild adverse events reported. The solution of Table 11-1 was further found to have similar bioavailability to intravenous administration of diazepam (96% of i.v.) The intranasal formulation of Table 11-1 exhibited a T<sub>max</sub> of 1.5 hours, a C<sub>max</sub> of approximately 272 ng/mL. These results are comparable to those reported in the literature for commercially available diazepam gel (Diastat®).

[0227] Solutions similar to those set forth in Table 11-1 can be prepared consisting of: diazepam (5-15 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.01-1 % (w/v)), vitamin E (45-65 % (w/v)), ethanol (10-25 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (5-15 % (w/v)); diazepam (9-11 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.1-0.5 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (15-22.5 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (7.5-12.5 % (w/v)); or diazepam (10 % (w/v)), dodecyl maltoside (0.15-0.3 % (w/v)), vitamin E (50-60 % (w/v)), ethanol (17-20 % (w/v)) and benzyl alcohol (10-12 % (w/v)).

[0228] Solutions similar to those set forth in Table 11-1 achieve bioavailability that is from about 80-125% of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously, e.g. bioavailability that is from about 90-110% of that achieved with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously or about 92.5 to 107.5% that obtained with the same benzodiazepine administered intravenously. Such solutions may be used

in methods of treating a patient with a disorder which may be treatable with a benzodiazepine drug, such as seizure, epileptic seizure and/or breakthrough seizure. In some embodiments, solutions described herein are herein may be used to treat seizures a disorder such as is treated with Diastat® diazepam gel.

[0229] A summary of pharmacokinetic data obtained for the solution and a suspension form of diazepam is shown below in Table 11-3:

Table 11-3

**Summary of Pharmacokinetic Parameters for Intranasal (10 mg) and IV (5 mg) Diazepam**

Parameter <sup>a</sup>	Diazepam Nasal Spray (10 mg/100µL)				Diazepam Injection	
	NRL-1.A Suspension		NRL-1.B Solution		5 mg/mL IV	
	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>	n	Mean (SD) <sup>b</sup>
C <sub>max</sub> (ng/mL)	24	221 (78.6)	24	272 (100)	24	555 (316)
T <sub>max</sub> (h) <sup>b</sup>	24	1.00 (0.6, 2.0)	24	1.50 (0.8, 4.0)	24	0.03 (0.03, 0.50)
AUC <sub>0-t</sub> (h×ng/mL)	24	5229 (1463)	24	7340 (1882)	24	3832 (1150)
AUC <sub>0-∞</sub> (h×ng/mL)	20	5381 (1409)	20	7338 (2072)	24	4104 (1318)
λ <sub>z</sub> (h <sup>-1</sup> )	20	0.0142 (0.0053)	20	0.0155 (0.0046)	24	0.0142 (0.0055)
t <sub>1/2</sub> (h)	20	56.2 (23.0)	20	49.2 (16.9)	24	56.2 (21.0)

a: Mean values are presented as arithmetic means.

b: Median (min, max) reported for T<sub>max</sub>.

[0230] The data collected in the study are further illustrated in Figures 1-3. Figure 1 is a linear scale plot of the arithmetic mean of the plasma concentration of diazepam after intranasal (IN) administration of 10 mg of

EP 12 801 372.9-1455

55

EPA-124 519

Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC

02.11.2017

diazepam as the suspension of Table 11-2 and after IN administration of 10 mg of diazepam as a solution of Table 11-1 compared to intravenous (IV) administration of 5 mg of diazepam. Figure 2 is a semi-logarithmic scale plot of the same data shown in Figure 1. Figure 3 shows the first 24 hours of data from Figure 1 on a linear scale.

## Main Request

### Claims

1. A pharmaceutical solution for use in a method of treating seizures by nasal administration of said pharmaceutical solution which consists of:

- 5 (a) a benzodiazepine drug;  
(b) one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, in an amount from 30% to 95% (w/w);  
(c) 1-25% (w/v) ethanol and 1-25% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, in a combined amount  
10 from 10% to 50% (w/w);  
(d) an alkyl glycoside; and  
(e) optionally at least one additional active pharmaceutical ingredient or excipient.

2. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the benzodiazepine drug is selected from the group consisting of: alprazolam, brotizolam, chlordiazepoxide, clobazam, clonazepam, clorazepam, demoxazepam, diazepam, flumazenil, flurazepam,  
15 halazepam, midazolam, nordazepam, medazepam, nitrazepam, oxazepam, lorazepam, prazepam, quazepam, triazolam, temazepam, loprazolam, any pharmaceutically-acceptable salts thereof, and any combinations thereof.

~~Former Claim 3. deleted:~~

20 3. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 2, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) benzodiazepine.

4. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 3, containing 1 to 20% (w/v) of diazepam.

5. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols are selected from the group consisting of:  $\alpha$ -tocopherol,  $\beta$ -tocopherol,  $\gamma$ -tocopherol,  $\delta$ -tocopherol,  $\alpha$ -tocotrienol,  $\beta$ -tocotrienol,  $\gamma$ -tocotrienol,  $\delta$ -tocotrienol, tocophersolan, any isomers thereof, any esters thereof, any analogs thereof, and any combinations thereof.

6. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, containing 10-22.5% (w/v) ethanol and 7.5-12.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.

30 7. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the one or more natural or synthetic tocopherols or tocotrienols, or any combinations thereof, is in an amount from 45% to 85% (w/w).

8. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 0.01-1% (w/v) alkyl glycoside, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol  
35 and 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol.

*MR, markup*

Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC  
12 801 372.9-1455

- 2 -

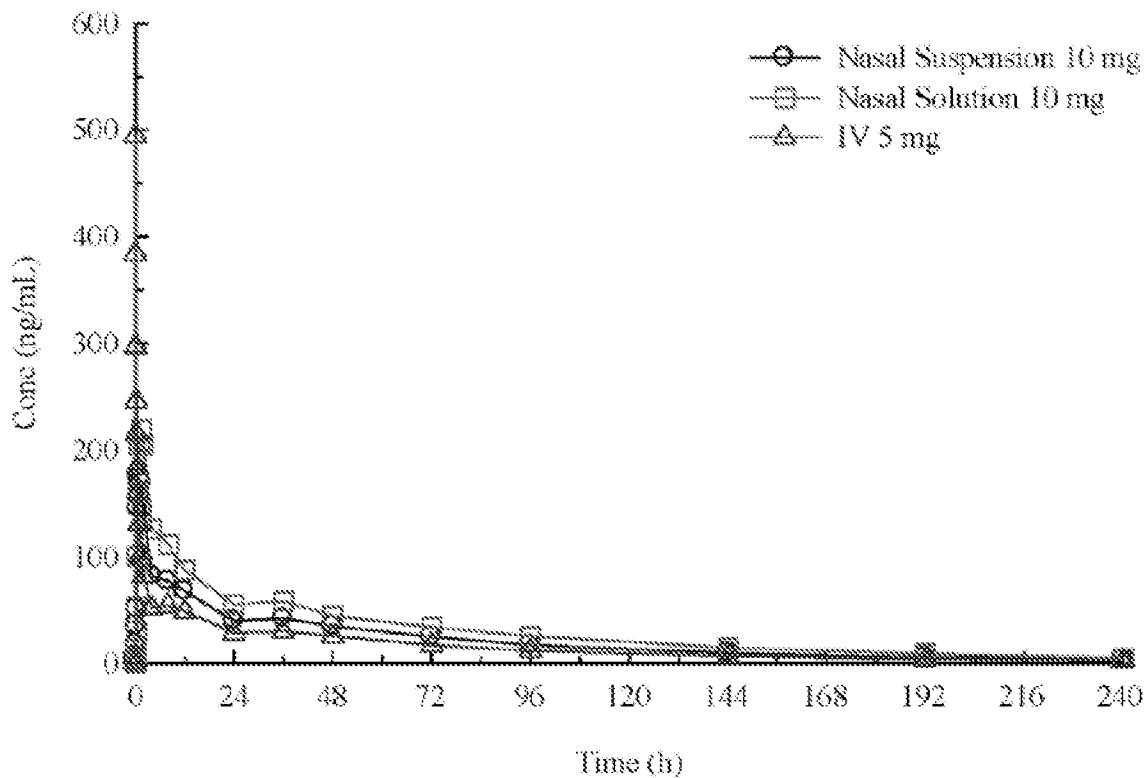
EPA-124 519  
02.11.2017

9. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises at least 0.01% (w/w) of an alkyl glycoside.
10. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 9, wherein the pharmaceutically-acceptable formulation comprises 0.01% to 1% (w/w) of dodecyl maltoside.
- 5 11. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of diazepam, vitamin E, ethanol, benzyl alcohol, and dodecyl maltoside.
12. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 5-15% (w/v) diazepam, 45-65% (w/v) vitamin E, 10-25% (w/v) ethanol, 5-15% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.01%-1% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.
- 10 13. The pharmaceutical solution for use according to claim 1, consisting of 10% (w/v) diazepam, 56.47% (w/v) vitamin E, q.s. dehydrated ethanol, 10.5% (w/v) benzyl alcohol, and 0.25% (w/v) dodecyl maltoside.

1/5

FIG. 1

Linear Scale

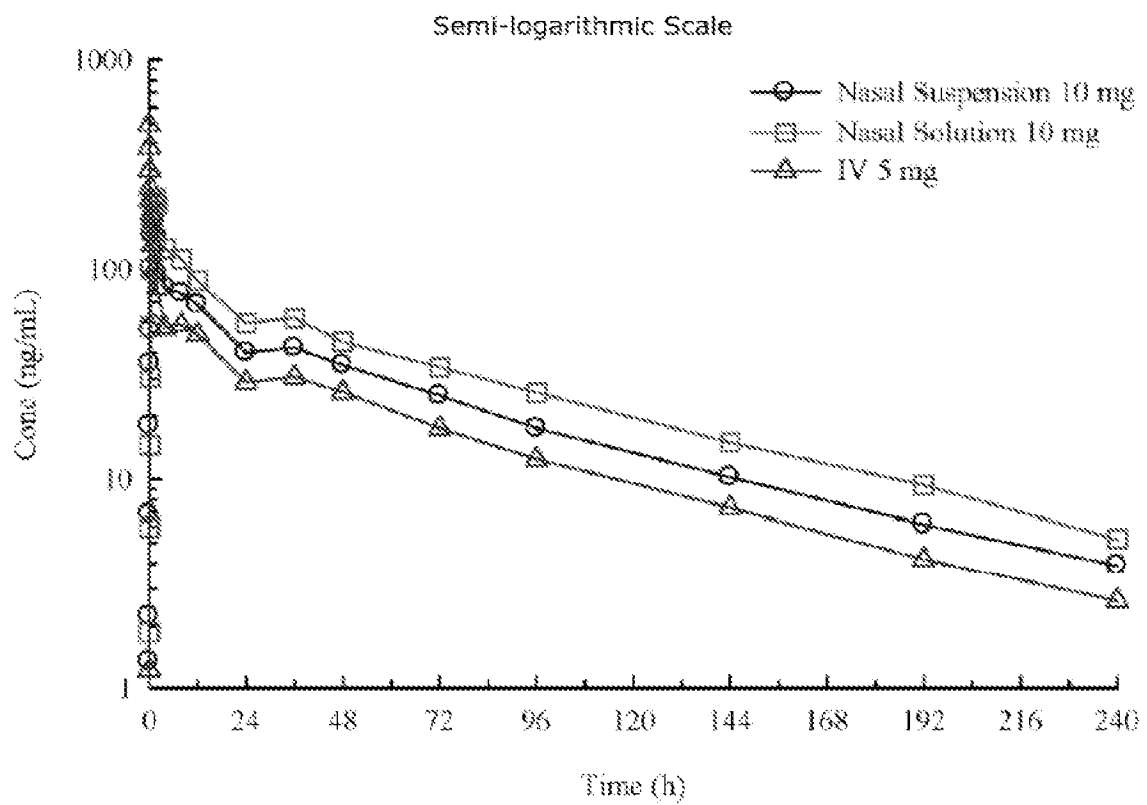


WO 2012/174158

PCT/US2012/042311

2/5

FIG. 2



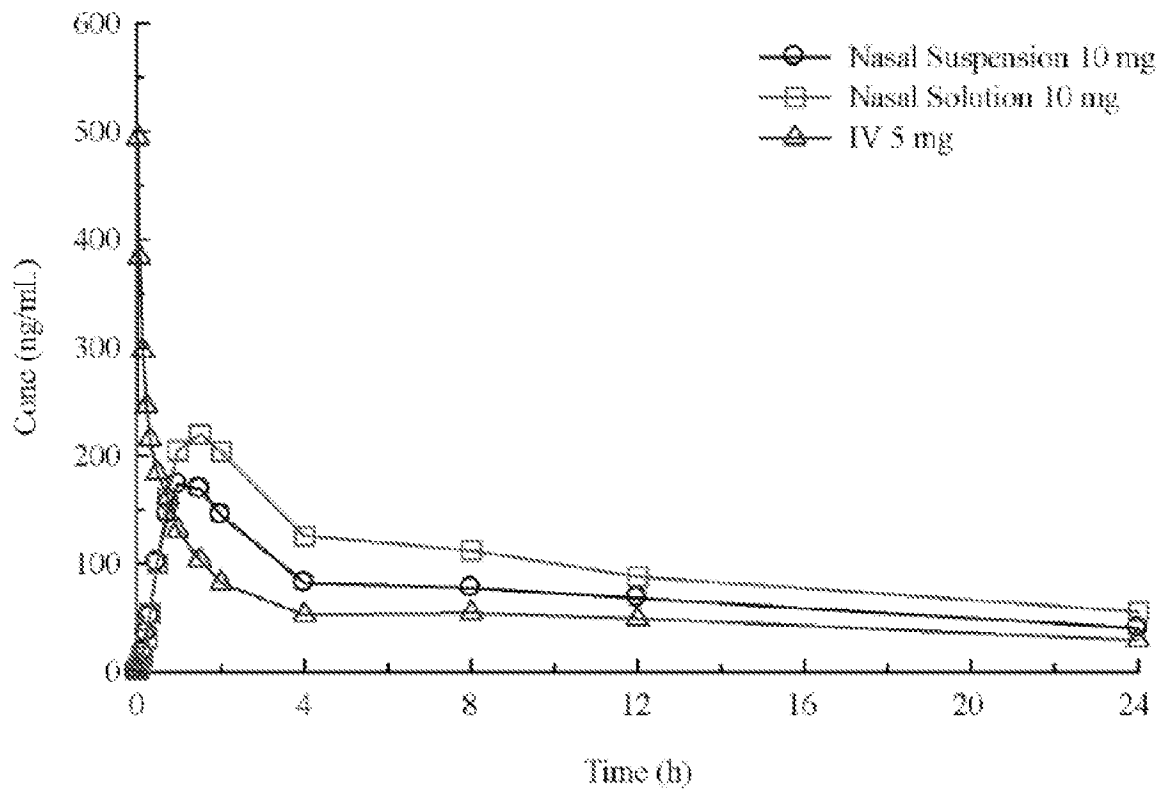
WO 2012/174158

PCT/US2012/042311

3/5

FIG. 3

Linear Scale

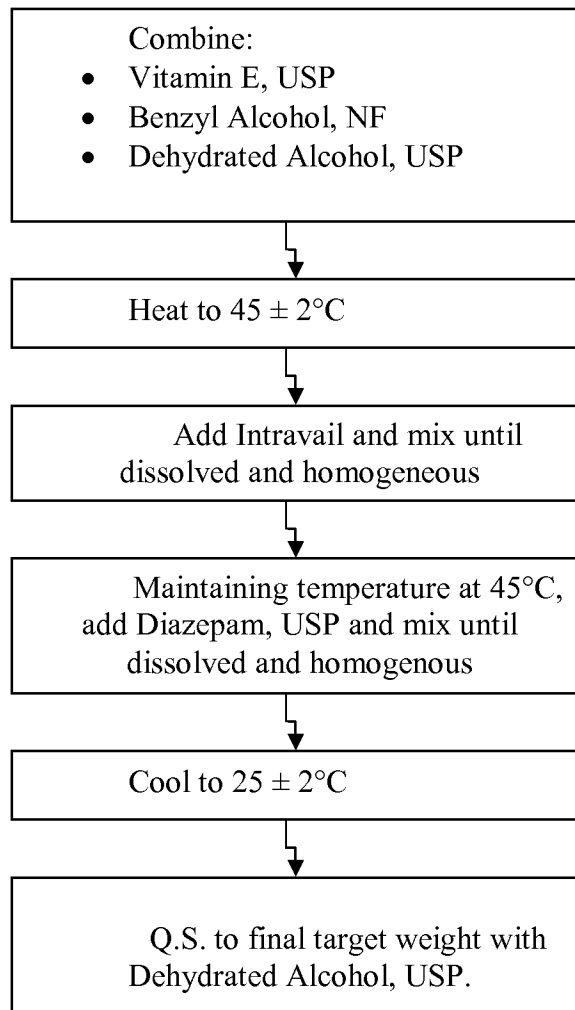




WO 2012/174158

PCT/US2012/042311

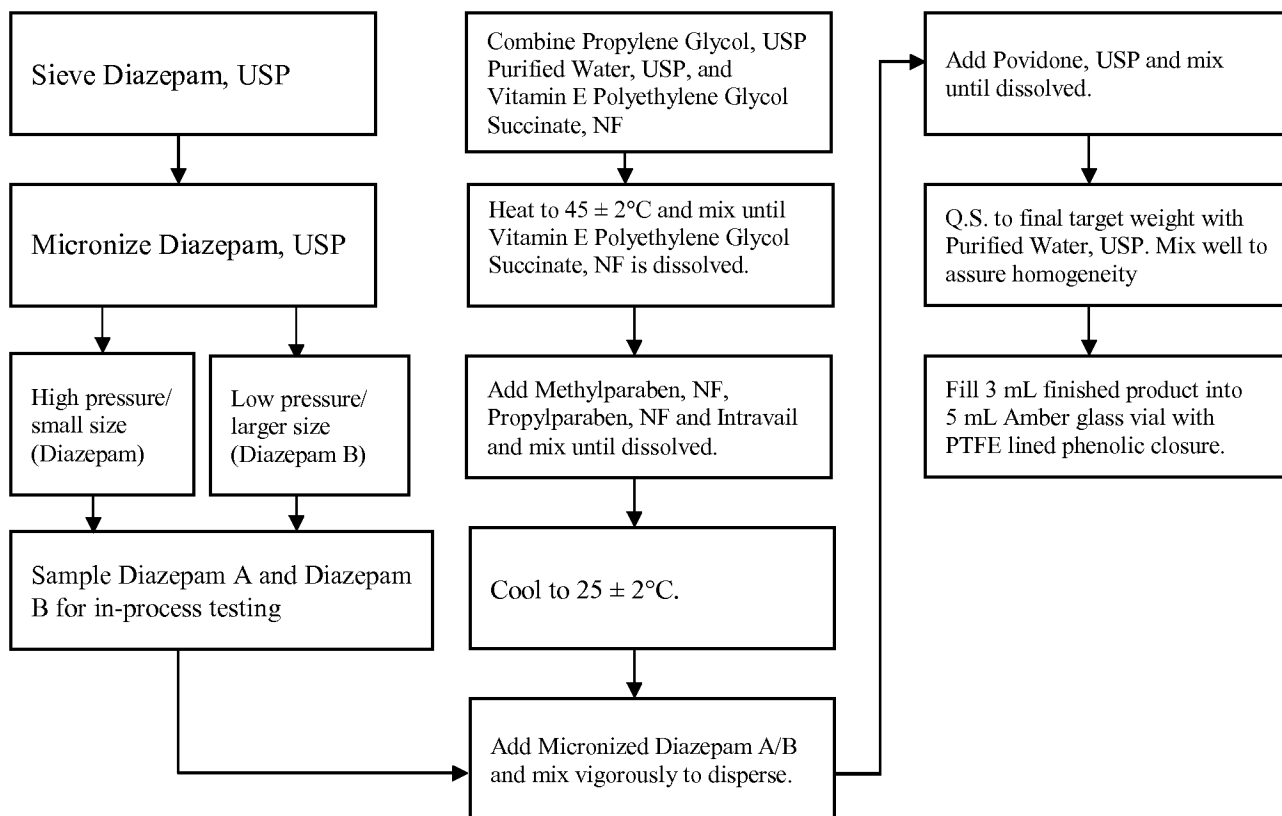
4/5

**FIG. 4: Flow Diagram for the Manufacture of Diazepam Solution**

WO 2012/174158

PCT/US2012/042311

5/5

**FIG. 5: Flow Diagram for Preparation of Diazepam Suspension****Flow Diagram for the Manufacture of NRL-1A**

Application No.:

12 801 372.9

#### IV.2. Patent classification

The classification has been changed. It now is as follows:

INV. A61K9/08 A61K47/10 A61K47/22 A61K47/26 A61K31/5513 A61K31/355  
A61K45/06 A61P25/08

#### IV.3. Title of the invention

The title indicated on the published patent application remains unchanged. It reads as follows:

VERABREICHUNG VON BENZODIAZEPIN

ADMINISTRATION OF BENZODIAZEPINE

ADMINISTRATION DE BENZODIAZÉPINE

#### IV.4. Documentation

20/11/2018

Date

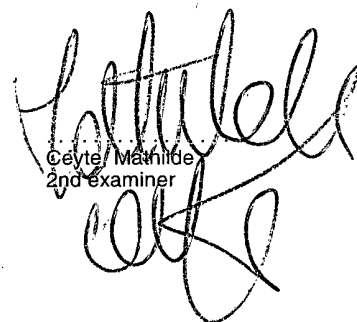


Lamers, Wolfram  
Chairman

Enclosure(s):



Gomez Gallardo  
1st examiner



Ceyte Manilde  
2nd examiner



Wichmann, Hendrik  
Wuesthoff & Wuesthoff  
Patentanwälte PartG mbB  
Schweigerstraße 2  
81541 München  
ALLEMAGNE

**Formalities Officer**  
Name: Verboom, Bob  
Tel: +31 70 340 - 3761  
or call  
+31 (0)70 340 45 00

Application No. 12 801 372.9 - 1455	Ref. EPA-124 519	Date 06.12.2017
Applicant Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC		

## Communication under Rule 71(3) EPC

### 1. Intention to grant

You are informed that the examining division intends to grant a European patent on the basis of the above application, with the text and drawings and the related bibliographic data as indicated below.

A copy of the relevant documents is enclosed.

#### 1.1 Main Request

##### In the text for the Contracting States:

AL AT BE BG CH CY CZ DE DK EE ES FI FR GB GR HR HU IE IS IT LI LT LU LV MC MK MT NL NO PL PT  
RO RS SE SI SK SM TR

##### Description, Pages

1-55 filed in electronic form on 02-11-2017

##### Claims, Numbers

1-13 filed in electronic form on 02-11-2017

##### Drawings, Sheets

1/5-5/5 as published

##### With the following amendments to the above-mentioned documents proposed by the division

Description, Pages 2-11, 15-18, 20-24, 26-32, 34-36, 38, 39, 43-45, 50, 51, 54

Claims, Numbers 3

**Comments**

## DESCRIPTION

Page 2: Mention of relevant prior art in the description (Rule 42(1) EPC)

Page 2: Wording according to Art. 54(4) and (5) EPC.

Pages 2-11, 15-18, 20-24, 26-32, 34-36, 39, 43-45, 50, 51, 54: Description adapted to amended claims (Art. 84 EPC)

Pages 2, 10, 15, 31, 34-36, 38, 39: Error(s) in spelling, grammar, typography corrected

## CLAIMS

Page 1, Claim 3: Deletion of irrelevant and/or superfluous information

**1.2 Bibliographic data**

The title of the invention in the three official languages of the European Patent Office, the international patent classification, the designated contracting states, the registered name(s) of the applicant(s) and the other bibliographic data are shown on **EPO Form 2056** (enclosed).

**2. Invitation**

You are invited, **within a non-extendable period of four months** of notification of this communication,

**2.1 to EITHER approve the text communicated above and verify the bibliographic data (Rule 71(5) EPC)**

(1) by filing a translation of the claim(s) in the other two official languages of the EPO

	Fee code	EUR
--	----------	-----

(2a) by paying the fee for grant including the fee for publication:  
minus any amount already paid (Rule 71a(5) EPC):

<b>007</b>	925.00
	0.00

---

Total amount:	925.00
---------------	--------

(3) by paying additional claims fees under Rule 71(4) EPC;  
number of claims fees payable: 0  
minus any amount already paid (Rule 71a(5) EPC):

<b>016</b>	0.00
	0.00

---

Total amount:	0.00
---------------	------

**Important:** If the translations of the claims and fees have already been filed and paid respectively in reply to a previous communication under Rule 71(3) EPC, e.g. in the case of resumption of examination after approval (see Guidelines C-V, 6), **agreement as to the text to be granted** (Rule 71a(1) EPC) must be expressed within the same time limit (e.g. by approving the text and verifying the bibliographic data, by confirming that grant proceedings can go ahead with the documents on file and/or by stating which translations of the claims already on file are to be used).

Note 1: See "Notes concerning fee payments" below.

Note 2: Any overpaid "minus" amounts will be refunded when the decision to grant (EPO Form 2006A) has been issued.

Note 3: For the calculation of the grant fee under Article 2(2), No. 7, RFees (old fee structure), the number of pages is determined on the basis of a clean copy of the application documents, in which text deleted as a result of any amendments by the examining division is not shown.

Such clean copy is made available via on-line file inspection only.

**2.2 OR, in the case of disapproval, to request reasoned amendments or corrections to the text communicated above or keep to the latest text submitted by you (Rule 71(6) EPC).**

In this case the translations of the claims and fee payments mentioned under point 2.1 above are NOT due.

The terms "amendment(s)" and "correction(s)" refer only to amendments or corrections of the application documents and not of other documents (e.g. bibliographic data, the designation of the inventor, etc.).

If filing amendments, you must identify them and indicate the basis for them in the application as filed. Failure to meet either requirement may lead to a communication from the examining division requesting that you correct this deficiency (Rule 137(4) EPC).

**2.3 Bibliographic data**

Where you request a change or correction of bibliographic data in response to the Rule 71(3) communication, this will **not** cause the sending of a further communication under Rule 71(3) EPC. You will still have to pay the fees and file translations in reply to the Rule 71(3) communication in the case of 2.1 above, unless you also file a reasoned request for amendments or corrections in response to the Rule 71(3) communication (see case 2.2 above).

**3. Loss of rights**

If neither of the two possible actions above (see points 2.1 or 2.2) is performed in due time, the European patent application will be deemed to be withdrawn (Rule 71(7) EPC).

**4. Further procedure**

**4.1 In the case of point 2.1 above**

- 4.1.1** The decision to grant the European patent will be issued, and the **mention of the grant** of the patent will be published in the European Patent Bulletin, if the requirements concerning the translation of the claims and the payment of all fees are fulfilled and there is agreement as to the text to be granted (Rule 71a(1) EPC).

**Note on payment of the renewal fee:**

If a renewal fee becomes due before the next possible date for publication of the mention of the grant of the European patent, publication will be effected only after the renewal fee and any additional fee have been paid (Rule 71a(4) EPC).

Under Article 86(2) EPC, the obligation to pay renewal fees to the European Patent Office terminates with the payment of the renewal fee due in respect of the year in which the mention of the grant of the European patent is published.

**Note on payment of the designation fee(s):**

If the designation fee(s) become(s) due after the communication under Rule 71(3) EPC, the mention of the grant of the European patent will not be published until these fees have been paid (Rule 71a(3) EPC).

- 4.1.2** After publication, the **European patent specification** can be downloaded free of charge from the EPO publication server <https://data.epo.org/publication-server>.

**4.1.3 Filing of translations in the contracting states**

As regards translation requirements prescribed by the contracting states under Article 65(1) EPC, please consult the website of the European Patent Office

[www.epo.org](http://www.epo.org) → Law & practice → Legal texts, National law relating to the EPC

[www.epo.org](http://www.epo.org) → Law & practice → All Legal texts → London Agreement

**In the case of a valid extension or validation**

As regards translation requirements prescribed by the extension or validation states, please consult the website of the European Patent Office

[www.epo.org](http://www.epo.org) → Law & practice → Legal texts, National law relating to the EPC

**Failure to supply a prescribed translation in a contracting state, or in an extension or validation state may result in the patent being deemed to be void *ab initio* in the state concerned (Art. 65(3) EPC).**

**4.2 In the case of 2.2 above**

If the present communication under Rule 71(3) EPC is based on an auxiliary request and, within the time limit, you maintain the main request or a higher ranking request which is not allowable, the application will be refused (Art. 97(2) EPC).

If the examining division gives its consent to the requested amendments or corrections, it will issue a new communication under Rule 71(3) EPC; otherwise, it shall resume the examination proceedings (Rule 71(6) EPC).

**5. Filing of a divisional application**

Any divisional application relating to this European patent application must be filed directly with the European Patent Office in Munich, The Hague or Berlin and will be in the language of the proceedings for the present application, or if the latter was not in an official language of the EPO, the divisional application may be filed in the language of the present application as filed (see Article 76(1) and Rule 36(2) EPC). Any such divisional application must be filed while the present application is still pending (Rule 36(1) EPC; Guidelines A-IV, 1.1.1).

**6. Notes concerning fee payments****6.1 Making payments**

For payments made via deposit account, please note that as from 1 December 2017 debit orders will only be carried out if filed in an electronically processable format (xml), using an accepted means of filing as laid down in the Arrangements for deposit accounts (ADA), published in the Supplementary publication in the Official Journal.

All relevant information related to the modes of payment of fees to the EPO can be retrieved from the EPO website at "**Making Payments**".

**6.2 Information concerning fee amounts**

Procedural fees are usually adjusted every two years, on even years, with effect from 1 April. Therefore, before making a payment, parties should verify the amounts actually due on the date of payment using the applicable version of the Schedule of fees and expenses, published as a Supplement to the Official Journal of the EPO, available on the EPO website ([www.epo.org](http://www.epo.org)) at [www.epo.org/schedule-of-fees](http://www.epo.org/schedule-of-fees). The "Schedule of fees" table allows the viewing, downloading and searching of individual fee amounts, both current and previous.

**6.3 Note to users of the automatic debiting procedure**

The fee for grant, including the fee for publication, and any additional claims fees due under Rule 71(4) EPC will be debited automatically on the date of filing of the translations of the claims, or on the last day of the period of this communication. However, if the designation fee(s) become(s) due as set out in Rule 71a(3) EPC and/or a renewal fee becomes due as set out in Rule 71a(4) EPC, these should be paid separately by another permitted way of payment in order not to delay the publication of the mention of the grant. The same applies in these circumstances to the payment of extension and validation fees. The same applies in these circumstances to the payment of extension and validation fees.

Note: If a waiver is expressed in response to a Rule 71(3) communication (see OJ EPO 2015, A52), the fee for grant, including the fee for publication/printing, and any additional claims fees will not be debited automatically. These fees must be paid separately by another means of payment allowed under the Rules relating to Fees.

**Examining Division:**

**Chairman:** Lamers, Wolfram  
**2nd Examiner:** Ceyte, Mathilde  
**1st Examiner:** Gómez Gallardo, S



Verboom, Bob  
**For the Examining Division**  
Tel. No.: +31 70 340 - 3761

**Branch at The Hague**

Enclosures: Text intended for grant  
EPO Form 2056



**Annex to EPO Form 2004, Communication pursuant to Rule 71(3) EPC**

Bibliographical data of European patent application No. 12 801 372.9

For the intended grant of the European patent, the bibliographical data are set out below, for information:

**Title of invention:** – VERABREICHUNG VON BENZODIAZEPIN  
– ADMINISTRATION OF BENZODIAZEPINE  
– ADMINISTRATION DE BENZODIAZÉPINE

**Classification:** INV. A61K9/08 A61K47/10 A61K47/22 A61K47/26 A61K31/5513 A61K31/355  
A61K45/06 A61P25/08

**Date of filing:** 13.06.2012

**Priority claimed:** US / 14.06.2011 / USP201161497017  
US / 13.12.2011 / USP201161570110

**Contracting States\***  
for which fees have  
been paid: AL AT BE BG CH CY CZ DE DK EE ES FI FR GB GR HR HU IE IS IT LI LT LU  
LV MC MK MT NL NO PL PT RO RS SE SI SK SM TR

**Extension States\***  
for which fees have  
been paid:

**Validation States\***  
for which fees have  
been paid:

**Applicant(s)\*\*:** Hale BioPharma Ventures, LLC  
1042-B N. El Camino Real  
Suite 430  
Encinitas, CA 92024  
US

**Inventor(s):** CARTT, Steve  
3260 Whipple Road  
Union City, CA 94587  
US  
  
MEDEIROS, David  
212 Crown Circle  
South San Francisco, CA 94080  
US  
  
GWOZDZ, Garry, Thomas  
432 Pine Street  
Jim Thorpe, PA 18229  
US

LOXLEY, Andrew  
126 Market Street 5  
Philadelphia, PA 19106  
US

MITCHNICK, Mark  
80 Three Mile Harbor Drive  
East Hampton, NY 11937  
US

HALE, David  
9232 Bernardo Lakes Drive  
San Diego, CA 92127  
US

MAGGIO, Edward, T.  
16870 W. Bernardo Drive Suite 390  
San Diego, CA 92127  
US

\*) If the time limit for the payment of designation fees according to Rule 39(1) EPC has not yet expired and the applicant has not withdrawn any designation, **all Contracting States/Extension States/Validation States** are currently still deemed to be designated. See also Rule 71a(3) EPC and, if applicable, the above Note to users of the automatic debiting procedure.

\*\*) If two or more applicants have designated different Contracting States, this is indicated here.